





User's Guide



IMPORTANT:

Read this manual carefully before using your printer. Save this manual for future reference.

LBP3600 Laser Printer User's Guide

Manuals for the Printer

The manuals for this printer are divided as follows. Please refer to them for detailed information.



Guides with this symbol are PDF manuals included on the accompanying CD-ROM.



• To view the manual in PDF format, Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is required. If Adobe Reader/Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed on your system, please download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website.

[•] The printer illustration on the cover may differ slightly from your printer.



Considerable effort has been made to ensure that this manual is free of inaccuracies and omissions. However, as we are constantly improving our products, if you need an exact specification, please contact Canon.

Contents

Preface viii
How To Use This Manual viii
Symbols Used in This Manual viii
Buttons Used in This Manual viii
Operation Screens Used in This Manualix
Abbreviations Used in This Manualix
Legal Notices
Trademarks
Copyrightx
Disclaimersx
Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images xi
Important Safety Instructions xii
Installation
Power Supply
Handlingxiv
Maintenance and Inspections xv
Consumables
Others xvii

Chapter 1 Before You Start Using This Printer

Features and Benefits 1-2
Parts and Their Functions 1-3
Main Unit
Front View 1-3
Rear View 1-4
Inner View
Indicators
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7 Turning the Printer ON/OFF 1-10
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7 Turning the Printer ON/OFF 1-10 Turning the Printer ON 1-10
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7 Turning the Printer ON/OFF 1-10 Turning the Printer ON 1-10 Turning the Printer OFF 1-11
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7 Turning the Printer ON/OFF 1-10 Turning the Printer ON 1-10 Turning the Printer OFF 1-11 Connecting to a Computer 1-12
Connecting the Power Cord 1-7 Turning the Printer ON/OFF 1-10 Turning the Printer ON 1-10 Turning the Printer OFF 1-11 Connecting to a Computer 1-12 Using a USB Cable 1-13

Chapter 2 Loading and Delivering Paper

Paper Requirements	
Usable Paper	
Paper Size	
Paper Type	
Abbreviations of Paper Sizes	
Printable Area	
Unusable Paper	
Storing Paper	
Storing Printouts	
Paper Source	
Paper Source Type	
Paper Capacity for Paper Source.	
Selecting a Paper Source	
Paper Delivery Area	
Output Tray	
Paper Capacity for Paper Delivery Area	
Printing from a Paper Cassette	
Loading Paper in a Paper Cassette	
Loading Paper in Cassette 1	
Loading Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4	
Changing the Size of Paper in a Paper Cassette	
Changing the Size of Paper in Cassette 1	
Changing the Size of Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4	
Setting Up the Printer Driver and Printing	
Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray	
Printing Paper (Other than Envelopes)	
Printing Envelopes	
2-sided Printing	
Automatic 2-sided Printing	
Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing	
Loading Paper in a Paper Cassette.	
When Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray.	
Performing 2-sided Printing Manually	

Chapter 3 Setting Up the Printing Environment

Introduction	
After Installing the Printer	3-2
Steps for Printing to Be Followed Each Time	3-2
Required System Environment	3-3

Installing the CAPT Software	. 3-4
For Windows 98/Me	. 3-5
Installing from CD-ROM Setup	. 3-5
Installing with Plug and Play	3-10
Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]	3-17
For Windows 2000	3-21
Installing from CD-ROM Setup	3-21
Installing with Plug and Play	3-26
Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]	3-30
For Windows XP/Server 2003	3-36
Installing from CD-ROM Setup	3-36
Installing with Plug and Play	3-41
Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]	3-44
After Completing Installation	3-52
Checking the Operations by Printer Status Print	3-54
Printing from a Network Computer by Sharing the Printer on a Network .	3-57
Print Server Settings	3-58
For Windows 98/Me	3-58
For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003	3-62
Installation on the Clients	3-67
Installing from CD-ROM Setup	3-68
Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]	3-73
Installing from [Windows Explorer]	3-75
Uninstalling the CAPT Software	3-77

Chapter 4 Printing a Document

Printing from the Application Software	4-3 4-7
Specifying the Printing Preferences	4-9
For Windows 98/Me	4-9
Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the Application	4-10
Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder	4-12
For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003	4-13
Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the Application	4-14
Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder	4-15
Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder	4-17
Setting Printer Information Before Printing.	4-19
Using the Printing Functions	4-22
Various Pages in the Printer Driver	4-22
[Page Setup] Sheet	4-23
[Finishing] Sheet.	4-27
[Paper Source] Sheet	4-29
[Quality] Sheet	4-31
[General] Sheet	4-34

[Details] Sheet (Windows 98/Me only)	4-34
[Sharing] Sheet	4-35
[Ports] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)	4-35
[Advanced] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)	4-36
[Security] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)	4-36
[Configuration]/[Device Settings] Sheet	4-37
[Profile] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)	4-38
Preview	4-40
Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet	4-41
Scaling Print Output	4-43
Scaling a Document Automatically	4-43
Scaling a Document Manually	4-44
Poster Printing	4-45
Watermark Printing	4-47
Watermark Printing	4-47
Editing Watermarks	4-49
Specifying a Custom Paper Size	4-52
Printing Borders and Printing Date	4-54
Selecting an Objective	4-55
Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations	4-57
Gutter	4-59
Specifying the Finishing Method	4-60
Specifying the Paper Feed Method	4-63
Specifying the Print Quality	4-65
Grayscale Settings	4-67
Grayscale Settings	4-67
Printing Grayscale Sample (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only) .	4-68
Specifying Profiles	4-71
Adding a Profile	4-71
Editing/Deleting a Profile	4-73
PageComposer	4-74
Viewing the Printer Settings/Restoring the Default Settings	4-77
Viewing the Printer Settings	4-77
Restoring the Default Settings	4-78
Printer Status Window	
Functions on the Printer Status Window	4-79
Displaying the Printer Status Window	4-81
Setting Preferences	4-82
[Utility] Menu	4-84
[Device Settings] Menu	4-84
[Refresh]	4-85
[Resolve Error]	4-85
Displaying Status When a Print Server is Used	4-85
·	

Chapter 5 Routine Maintenance

Replacing the Toner Cartridge 5-2
When a Message Appears 5-2
Using Up Toner
Replacing the Toner Cartridge
Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges 5-18
Storing the Toner Cartridge 5-20
Cleaning the Fixing Roller 5-21
Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum
Adjusting the Printing Position 5-28
Checking the Printing Position
Adjusting the Printing Position 5-30
Cleaning the Printer 5-35
Moving the Printer 5-37
Handling the Printer 5-45
Precautions for Handling the Printer 5-45
Precaution for Storing the Printer 5-46

Chapter 6 Optional Accessories

Optional Accessories 6-2
Paper Cassette
Paper Feeder
Duplex Unit
Network Board
Paper Feeder
Installation Space 6-8
Parts and Their Functions 6-9
Removing the Packing Materials 6-9
Removing the Packing Materials from the 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66 6-10
Removing the Packing Materials from the 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66E 6-13
Moving the Printer 6-15
Installing the Paper Feeders
Removing the Paper Feeders
Duplex Unit
Installation Space 6-29
Parts and Their Functions 6-30
Removing the Packing Materials 6-30
Installing the Duplex Unit 6-32
Removing the Duplex Unit 6-34
Network Board 6-38
Parts and Their Functions
Installing the Network Board 6-41

Setting the Network Board	6-45
Resetting the Network Board	6-48
Removing the Network Board	6-51

Chapter 7 Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting Map7-2
Alarm Indicator
Paper Jams
Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams7-6
Paper Jam in the Paper Feeders
Paper Jam in the Duplex Unit7-24
When the Message that Indicates the Paper Jam Does Not Disappear 7-29
Service Call Display7-39
Print Quality Problems7-41
Paper Problems
When Nothing is Printed7-49
Installation Problems7-50
When Uninstallation Fails7-51
Uninstalling the USB Class Driver7-53
Problems During Local Installation7-56
Installation Problems When the Printer is Shared on a Network
Miscellaneous Problems7-58
Confirming the Printer Features7-60

Chapter 8 Appendix

Specifications
Hardware Specifications8-2
Software Specifications8-3
Dimensions of Each Part8-4
Print Monitor Installer
Index
Location of the Serial Number8-13

Preface

Thank you for purchasing the Canon LASER SHOT LBP3600.

Please read this manual thoroughly before operating the printer in order to familiarize yourself with its capabilities, and to make the most of its many functions.

After reading this manual, store it in a safe place for future reference.

How To Use This Manual

Symbols Used in This Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to explain procedures, restrictions, handling precautions, and instructions that should be observed for safety.

	WARNING	Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. In order to use the printer safely, always pay attention to these warnings.
	CAUTION	Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons, or damage to property if not performed correctly. In order to use the printer safely, always pay attention to these cautions.
0	IMPORTANT	Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully in order to operate the printer correctly, and to avoid damage to the printer.
Ø	NOTE	Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure. Reading these notes is highly recommended.

Buttons Used in This Manual

The following button names are a few examples of how buttons to be pressed are expressed in this manual:

 Buttons on Computer Operation Screen : [Button Name] Example: [OK] [Details]

Operation Screens Used in This Manual

Operation screens used in this manual may differ from those on your computer depending on the system environment.

The buttons which you should press are marked with combined as shown below.

When multiple buttons can be pressed on the screen shot of computer operation screen, all buttons are marked. Select the button which suits your needs.

	ere i en nomineerep	
CD-ROM Setup Help	Manuals	
Install		Click this button for operation
README File		

Abbreviations Used in This Manual

In this manual, product names and model names are abbreviated as follows:

Microsoft [®] Windows [®] 95 operating system :	Windows 95
Microsoft [®] Windows [®] 98 operating system :	Windows 98
Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system	:Windows Me
Microsoft [®] Windows [®] 2000 operating system :	Windows 2000
Microsoft [®] Windows [®] XP operating system :	Windows XP
Microsoft [®] Windows Server [™] 2003 operating system :	Windows Server 2003
Microsoft [®] Windows [®] operating system :	Windows
LASER SHOT LBP3600 :	LBP3600

Legal Notices

Trademarks

Canon, the Canon Logo, LASER SHOT, and LBP are trademarks of Canon Inc.

Adobe[®], Adobe Acrobat, and Adobe Reader are trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

Windows Server is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product and company names herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright

Copyright 2003 by Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

Disclaimers

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Money Orders
- · Certificates of Deposit
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title

- Travelers Checks
- Food Stamps
- Passports
- Immigration Papers
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Stock Certificates
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner

Important Safety Instructions

Please read these "Important Safety Instructions" thoroughly before operating the printer. As these instructions are intended to prevent injury to the user or other persons or destruction of property, always pay attention to these instructions. Also, since it may result in unexpected accidents or injuries, do not perform any operation unless otherwise specified in the manual. Improper operation or use of this machine could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.

Installation

WARNING

- Do not install the printer near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not place the following items on the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the power switch ①, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
 - Necklaces and other metal objects
 - Cups, vases, flowerpots, and other containers filled with water or liquids



 Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.

- Never block the ventilation slots on the printer. The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Blocking the ventilation slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire. Never place the printer on a soft surface, such as a sofa or rug.
- Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock:
 - A damp or dusty location
 - A location exposed to smoke and steam such as cookeries and humidifiers
 - A location exposed to rain or snow
 - A location near water faucets or water
 - A location exposed to direct sunlight
 - A location subject to high temperatures
 - A location near open flames
- When installing the printer, gently lower the printer onto the floor or other machine to avoid catching your hands, as this may result in personal injury.
- When connecting the interface cable, connect it properly according to this manual. If not connected properly, this may result in malfunction or electrical shock.
- When moving the printer, follow the instructions in this manual to hold it correctly. Failure to do so may cause you to drop the printer, resulting in personal injury. (See "Moving the Printer," on p. 5-37)

Power Supply

- Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord, or pull on or excessively bend it, as this could cause electrical damage and result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the power cord away from a heat source; failure to do this may cause the power cord coating to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in electrical shock.
- Do not plug the power cord to a multiplug power strip, as this may cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not bundle up or tie the power cord in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet, as failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use power cords other than the power cord provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- As a general rule, do not use extension cords or plug extension cords to a multiple power strip. If extension cords must be used or plugged to a multiple power strip, however, use them observing the following points on user's own authority. If you use extension cords improperly, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
 - Do not connect one extension cord to another.

- Make sure that the voltage of the power plug is the one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer) when you use the printer.
- Use an extension cord that allows the current value greater than the necessary one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer).
- When you use an extension cord, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.
- Periodically check that the extension cord is not overheated.

- Do not use power supplies with voltages other than those specified herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the power cord. Pulling on the power cord may expose or snap the core wire, or otherwise damage the power cord. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause current to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you will be unable to unplug it in an emergency.

Handling

🛕 WARNING

- Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the printer. There are high-temperature and high-voltage components inside the printer which may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Electrical equipment can be hazardous if not used properly. To avoid injury, do not allow children access to the interior of any electrical product and do not let them touch any electrical contacts or gears that are exposed.
- If the printer makes strange noises, or emits smoke, heat or unusual smells, immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Otherwise, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use highly flammable sprays near the printer. If gas from these sprays comes into contact with the electrical components inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always turn OFF the power switch, and disconnect the interface cables when moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not drop paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. Also, do not spill water, liquids, or flammable substances (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, etc.) inside the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the power switch, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

• When unplugging the USB cable when the power is turned ON, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.

- Do not place heavy objects on the printer, as they may tip over or fall resulting in personal injury.
- Be careful when handling the expansion board. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of the expansion board may result in personal injuries.
- Turn OFF the power switch for safety when the printer will not be used for a long period of time such as overnight. Also, turn OFF the power switch on the right of the printer and unplug the power plug for safety when the printer will not be used for an extended period of time such as during consecutive holidays.
- The laser beam can be harmful to human bodies. Since radiation emitted inside the printer is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the printer during any phase of user operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.
 - Never open covers other than those instructed in this manual.
 - Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.



- If the laser beam escapes from the printer, exposure may cause serious damage to your eyes.
- It is confirmed that the LBP3600 is a Class 1 laser product in compliance with IEC60825-1: 1993.

Maintenance and Inspections

- When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the main power switch, then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Clean the printer using a slightly dampened cloth with water or a mild detergent diluted with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.
- Do not burn or throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.
- Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet regularly, and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the AC power outlet with a dry cloth to ensure that all dust and grime is removed. If the power plug is plugged for a long period of time in a damp, dusty, or smoky location, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp. This may cause a short circuit and result in a fire.

- Never attempt to service this printer yourself, except as explained in this manual. There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. Adjust only those controls that are covered in the operating instructions. Improper adjustment could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.
- The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer may become hot during use. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.



- When removing jammed paper or replacing a toner cartridge, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing paper which has become jammed inside the printer, remove the jammed paper gently to prevent the toner on the paper from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.
- When loading paper or removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

 When removing a used toner cartridge from the toner cartridge guide, remove the cartridge carefully to prevent the toner from scattering and entering your eyes or mouth. If the toner enters your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

Consumables

- Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite and result in burns or a fire.
- Do not store a toner cartridge or copy paper in places exposed to open flames, as this may cause the toner or paper to ignite and result in burns or a fire.

A CAUTION

 Keep toner and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If these items are ingested, consult a physician immediately.

Others



• The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic field. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge and consult your physician.

Before You Start Using This Printer

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the major features and basic functions of this printer.

Features and Benefits	1-2
Parts and Their Functions.	1-3
Main Unit	
Indicators	
Connecting the Power Cord	1-7
Turning the Printer ON/OFF	1-10
Turning the Printer ON	
Turning the Printer OFF	
Connecting to a Computer	1-13
Using a USB Cable	
Using a LAN Cable	

■ High Performance Printing System "CAPT"

LBP3600 is equipped with the latest high performance printing system, "CAPT" (Canon Advanced Printing Technology), that is compatible with Windows operation systems. As this system batch-processes the print data in a computer instead of a printer, it enables high-speed printing, making full use of the features of the computer. Also, a large amount of data can be processed without upgrading printer memory.

■ USB 2.0 High Speed Preinstalled

LBP3600 achieves high-speed transmission by supporting High-Speed I/F USB 2.0 that offers up to 480 Mbps transmission speeds.

Various Paper Handling Options

In addition to the standard multi-purpose tray and universal cassette, optional 250-sheet paper feeders are available, enabling the continuous automatic feeding of up to 1,100 of 5 different paper sizes. The multi-purpose tray have a wide array of uses, allowing you to perform 2-sided printing manually and print on various kinds of paper such as envelopes and as large as A3 size paper. Moreover, by installing the optional duplex unit, you can perform automatic 2-sided printing on the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray (standard size paper only) or a paper cassette. By doing so, you can save paper and make the file space more efficient.

■ Low Power Consumption and Quick Startup

By adopting "On-demand Fixing System", LBP3600 achieves low power consumption and quick startup. This Canon's original technology enables instantaneous heating of the fusing heater only before printing, saving warm-up time. So, LBP3600 is always ready to print. Also, thanks to its power-saving design, the fixing unit's power consumption is very low when idle.

Supports Various Types of Media

LBP3600 supports various types of media, such as plain paper, heavy paper, envelops, transparencies, and labels.

Network-capable Printer

LBP3600 can be used as a network printer for Ethernet by installing the optional network board. The network board enables the operation of the printer using a Web Browser "Remote UI" allowing you to specify settings and manage the printer from a computer on the network.

🧷 NOTE

For details on the operation systems that support the optional network board and procedure for setting the board, see "Network Guide".

Parts and Their Functions

This section describes the name and function of each part in order for you to use this printer properly to make full use of its functions.

Main Unit

The following are the parts and functions of the main unit.



Do not block the ventilation slots (including the air intake slot and exhaust slot) on the printer. If any ventilation slot is blocked, the temperature inside the printer may rise, resulting in a fire.

Front View

The following are the parts on the front side of the printer and their functions.



1 Indicators

Show the status of the printer. (See p. 1-6)

② Top Cover

Opened when removing paper jammed in the delivery area. Before removing the jammed paper, raise the top cover slowly and firmly, and open it completely until it stops. (See p. 7-4)

3 Output Tray

Delivers paper with the printing side facing down. (See p. 2-15)

④ Power Switch

(5) Grips for Moving

Hold these grips when moving the printer. (See p. 5-37)

⑥ Paper Size Guide

Insert the paper size indicator for the paper loaded in the paper cassette into the paper size slot. (See p. 2-42)

⑦ Paper Cassette

Up to 250 sheets of paper (64 g/m²) at sizes of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive can be loaded. (See p. 2-18)

⑧ Multi-purpose Tray

Load paper when feeding from the multi-purpose tray. (See p. 2-57) Opened when replacing the toner cartridge or when clearing paper jams. (See p. 5-2)

(9) Paper Retaining Lever

Holds down the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray. (See p. 2-58)

1 Paper Guide

Adjust the position of the guide to the width of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray. You can load paper up to the load limit marks on this tray.

Auxiliary Tray

Pulled out so that paper will not hang over the edge when delivering long-size paper such as A3 or B4 paper. (See p. 2-16)

Rear View

The following are the parts on the rear side of the printer and their functions.

🕛 IMPORTANT

Do not touch the duplex unit connector, as this may result in damage to the printer or printer error.



1) Top Rear Cover

Removed when installing the optional duplex unit. If the duplex unit is not installed, set the top rear cover properly. If the top rear cover is not set properly, an error message such as "Duplex Unit is not attached correctly" or "Toner Cover Open" appears in the Printer Status Window.

② USB Connector

Connected to the USB cable. Connect the other end of the cable to the USB port on the computer. (See p. 1-13)

③ Expansion Slot

The optional network board is installed in this slot. (See p. 6-38)

4 Left Cover

Not used for this printer. Do not open.

(5) Rating Label

The serial number (Serial No.) for printer identification is indicated on this label. The number is required for receiving service or repairs. The current value indicated in this rating label shows the average power current consumption. (See p. 8-13)

6 Ventilation Slot (air intake slot)

Intakes air to cool the insides of the printer.

⑦ Ventilation Slot

Intakes and exhausts air to cool the insides of the printer.

8 Bottom Rear Cover

Removed when installing the optional duplex unit.

9 Duplex Unit Connector

Used for connecting the optional duplex unit.

Power Socket

Connect the supplied power cord to this socket.

(1) Ventilation Slot (exhaust slot)

Exhausts air to cool the insides of the printer.

Inner View

The following are the parts inside the printer and their functions.



Do not touch the transfer roller, as this may result in deterioration in print quality.



1) Toner Cover Release Button

Press to open the toner cover. (See p. 5-5, p. 7-9)

② Delivery Guide Inner Cover (When opened) Opened when removing paper jammed inside the toner cover.

③ Paper Size Cover (When opened)

Opened when inserting the paper size indicator into the paper size slot or when setting the paper size dial to the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette. (See p. 2-41)

④ Paper Size Dial

Set the dial to the size of paper in the paper cassette. (See p. 2-42)

⑤ Paper Size Slot

Insert the paper size indicator for the size of the loaded paper into this slot. (See p. 2-42)

(6) Toner Cover (When opened)

Opened when replacing the toner cartridge or removing jammed paper. (See p. 5-5, p. 7-9)

⑦ Transfer Roller

Important part for transferring toner onto paper when printing.

(8) Toner Cartridge Guide

When setting the toner cartridge, push it while aligning the projections on each side of the toner cartridge with this guide. (See p. 5-7)

Indicators

Ø NOTE

You can confirm information on the printer status using the Printer Status Window from your computer. For details on the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.



1) Paper Indicator (Red)

Blinking: No paper or paper of an inappropriate size is loaded.

② Alarm Indicator (Red)

On: Service call is occurring. Blinking: An error is occurring, disabling printing.

③ Ready Indicator (Blue)

On: The printer is ready to print. Blinking: The printer is conducting some operation such as printing, warming up, or pausing printing.

Connecting the Power Cord

This section describes the procedure for connecting the power cord. For details on connecting the cord, see "Important Safety Instructions," on p. xii.

- Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord, or pull on or excessively bend it, as this could cause electrical damage and result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the power cord away from a heat source; failure to do this may cause the power cord coating to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in electrical shock.
- Do not plug the power cord to a multiplug power strip, as this may cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not bundle up or tie the power cord in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet, as failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use power cords other than the power cord provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- As a general rule, do not use extension cords or plug extension cords to a multiple power strip. If extension cords must be used or plugged to a multiple power strip, however, use them observing the following points on user's own authority. If you use extension cords improperly, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
 - Do not connect one extension cord to another.
- Make sure that the voltage of the power plug is the one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer) when you use the printer.
- Use an extension cord that allows the current value greater than the necessary one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer).
- When you use an extension cord, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.
- Periodically check that the extension cord is not overheated.

• Do not use power supplies with voltages other than those specified herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the power cord. Pulling on the power cord may expose or snap the core wire, or otherwise damage the power cord. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause current to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you will be unable to unplug it in an emergency.

🕛 IMPORTANT

- Do not plug the power cord into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- One AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer.
- Do not connect this printer to an uninterruptible power source. This may cause printer malfunction or breakdown at the occurrence of a power failure.

1 Make sure that the power switch of the printer is turned OFF.

The printer is OFF when " \bigcirc " of the power switch is pressed.



2 Plug the supplied power cord into the power socket.



3 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.



Turning the Printer ON/OFF

The power switch to turn the printer ON or OFF is located on the right side of the printer. Be sure to observe the following instructions in order to prevent unexpected problems.

Turning the Printer ON

In order to use this printer, you should press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON. After running a self-diagnostic test on the main unit and optional accessories, the printer will be ready to print.

🕛 IMPORTANT

- Do not turn the power ON immediately after turning it OFF. After turning the power OFF, wait for 3 seconds or longer before turning it ON again.
- If the printer does not operate properly, or an error message appears in the Printer Status Window, see "Troubleshooting," on p. 7-1.
- Be sure to set the paper cassette in the printer before you turn the power ON for the first time after you install the printer.



If no abnormality is found during the self-diagnostic test, the Ready indicator (blue) illuminates, and the printer is ready to print.



Turning the Printer OFF

Follow the instruction below to turn the power OFF.

MPORTANT

- If the printer is used on a network, make sure that it is not printing data from another computer before turning the power OFF.
- If you turn the power of the printer OFF, all print data remaining in the printer memory will be erased. So, wait for the necessary print data to be printed before turning the power OFF.
- Do not turn the power OFF when the printer is in any of the following status:
 - While printing
 - While running a self-diagnostic test immediately after turning the power of the printer ON

1 Press "O" of the power switch on the printer.



While " \bigcirc " of the power switch located on the right side of the printer is pressed, the power consumption is 0 W.

Connecting to a Computer

This section describes how to connect the printer to a computer.

As this printer is equipped with a USB connector, you can use a USB cable to connect to a computer. By installing an optional network board, the printer can be connected directly to the network using a LAN cable.

Using a USB Cable

Connect the printer with a USB cable to the computer in which a USB port is equipped.



When unplugging the USB cable when the power is turned ON, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

- You can connect or disconnect the USB cable even while the power of the computer or printer is ON. However, do not connect or disconnect the USB cable in the following situations, as this may result in a computer or printer error:
 - While the computer operating system (Windows) is starting up immediately after the computer is turned on
 - While printing
- If you connect or disconnect the USB cable while the power of the computer and printer are turned ON, after disconnecting the USB cable, wait for 5 seconds or longer before connecting it again. If you connect the USB cable immediately after disconnecting it, this may result in a computer or printer error.
- This printer performs two-way communication while printing. If the printer is connected with a print server, a USB-hub switching device or others that require one-way communication, it may result in printer error.

NOTE

- The appropriate USB interface differs depending on the operation system of the connected computer as follows. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
 - Windows 98/Me: USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
 - Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
- When you connect this printer to a computer with a USB cable, use a computer with manufacturer's guarantee of USB proper operation.
- This printer does not come with a USB cable. Have the appropriate one available for your computer.

1 Connect the B-type (square) end of the USB cable to the USB connector on the rear side of the printer.



2 Connect the A-type (flat) end of the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.



NOTE

- If a Wizard appears after connecting the USB cable by the Plug and Play automatic setup, install the software for this printer using either one of the following procedures. For more details, see "Installing the CAPT Software," on p. 3-4.
 - Click [Cancel] and install the software from CD-ROM Setup.
 - Install using Plug and Play.
- If you are not sure about the USB cable that is supported by your computer, contact the store where you purchased the computer.

Using a LAN Cable

If the optional network board (NB-C1) is installed, the printer can be connected to the network using a Category 5 twisted pair cable. Have a cable or hub available as needed.

NOTE

- For details on the procedure for installing the network board, see "Network Board," on p. 6-38.
- To use this printer on a network, the network setting is required, and the printer is required to be installed as a network printer. For details on these settings, see "Network Guide".

Network Environment

The optional network board supports 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX connection.

• When connecting to a 10BASE-T Ethernet network



• When connecting to a 100BASE-TX Ethernet network



IMPORTANT

- The network board for this printer cannot be connected to networks other than those listed above.
- Make sure that there is a free port on the hub to which the printer will be connected. An additional hub must be installed if there is no free port.


When connecting to the 100BASE-TX Ethernet network, all the devices to be connected to LAN, such as hub, LAN cable, and network board for computer, must support 100BASE-TX. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

1 Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of the network board.

Connect a LAN cable that is compatible with the LAN connector of the network board according to the network.







1

2 CHAPTER

Loading and Delivering Paper

This chapter describes the types of paper that can be used with this printer, and how to load and deliver paper.

Paper Requirements
Usable Paper
Printable Area
Unusable Paper
Storing Paper
Storing Printouts
Paper Source
Paper Source Type
Paper Capacity for Paper Source
Selecting a Paper Source
Paper Delivery Area
Output Tray
Paper Capacity for Paper Delivery Area
Printing from a Paper Cassette
Loading Paper in a Paper Cassette
Changing the Size of Paper in a Paper Cassette
Setting Up the Printer Driver and Printing
Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray
Printing Paper (Other than Envelopes)
Printing Envelopes
2-sided Printing
Automatic 2-sided Printing
Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing
Performing 2-sided Printing Manually

Paper Requirements

Usable Paper

To ensure optimum performance, use only paper that falls within the specifications in the following lists. Inappropriate paper may result in deterioration in print quality or paper jams.

IMPORTANT

- Print speed may drop depending on the settings for the paper size, paper type, and print copies.
- Envelope: Approximately 6 ppm
- When continuously printing the paper of 279.4 mm wide (Letter size) or less, the safety function that prevents damages caused by heat may slow the print speed down in stages. (It may be as slow as approximately 3 ppm.)

2

Loading and Delivering Paper **S**

Paper Size

The following shows the paper sizes that can be used with this printer. The \bigcirc mark indicates that the paper is available for the 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing using the optional duplex unit; the O mark indicates that the paper is available for only 1-sided printing; and the X mark indicates that the printing cannot be performed.

	Paper Source						
Paper Size	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)	Cassette 3 (Optional)	Cassette 4 (Optional)		
A5 ^{*1}	O	O	O	O	O		
B5 ^{*1}	0	0	0	0	O		
A4*1	O	O	0	O	O		
B4*2	0	O	0	O	0		
A3*2	O	0	O	O	O		
Letter*1	0	O	0	O	O		
Executive ^{*1}	0	0	0	O	O		
Legal ^{*2}	0	O	0	O	0		
Ledger ^{*2}	0	0	O	O	0		
Custom Paper Size ^{*2} Width : 76.2 - 297.0mm Height : 127.0 - 431.8mm	0	х	х	х	Х		
Envelope*2							
Envelope DL 110.0 mm x 220.0 mm	0	Х	Х	х	х		
Envelope COM10 105.0 mm x 241.0 mm	0	Х	Х	Х	х		
Envelope C5 162.0 mm x 229.0 mm	0	Х	Х	Х	Х		
Envelope Monarch 98.0 mm x 191.0 mm	0	Х	Х	Х	Х		
Envelope B5 176.0 mm x 250.0 mm	0	Х	Х	Х	Х		

*1 Paper can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

*2 Paper can be loaded only in portrait orientation.

Paper Type

The following shows the paper types that can be used with this printer. The \bigcirc mark indicates that the paper is available for the 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing using the optional duplex unit; the O mark indicates that the paper is available for only 1-sided printing; and the X mark indicates that the printing cannot be performed.

Printo		Printer Driver	Paper Source				
F	Paper Type	Setting	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)	Cassette 3 (Optional)	Cassette 4 (Optional)
Plain pa (64 - 80	per 9 g/m²)	[Plain Paper] [Plain Paper L] *1	0	0	0	0	0
	81 - 90 g/m ²	*2	0	0	0	0	0
Heavy paper	91 - 105 g/m ²	[Heavy Paper L]	0	Х	Х	Х	Х
	106 - 128 g/m ²	[Heavy Paper]	0	Х	Х	Х	Х

	Printer Driver	Paper Source				
Paper Type	Setting	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)	Cassette 3 (Optional)	Cassette 4 (Optional)
Transparency	[Transparencies]	0	х	х	х	х
Label	[Heavy Paper]	0	Х	Х	Х	Х
Envelope	*3	0	х	Х	Х	Х

*1 Select when paper is curled by selecting [Plain Paper].

*2 Select [Heavy Paper L] when performing 1-sided printing from the multi-purpose tray. When printing from a cassette or performing 2-sided printing, perform the following settings:

- ① Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type] in the [Paper Source] sheet.
- ② Click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then, select [Mode 4] for [Fixing Mode] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.
- *3 The printer automatically applies the appropriate print mode to each envelope type by specifying [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet.

Plain Paper

This printer can print plain paper that is 76.2 to 297.0 mm wide, 127.0 to 431.8 mm long, and that weighs between 64 and 80 g/m², including the standard size paper sizes: A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive.

Standard paper can be loaded in the paper cassettes and multi-purpose tray. Automatic 2-sided printing can be performed on paper of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Letter, Legal, and Executive sizes. Custom paper can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

Heavy Paper

This printer can print heavy paper that is 76.2 to 297.0 mm wide, 127.0 to 431.8 mm long, and that weighs between 81 and 128 g/m², including the standard size paper sizes: A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive. Heavy paper that weighs between 81 - 90 g/m² can be loaded in the paper cassettes and multi-purpose tray. Heavy paper that weighs between 91 - 128 g/m² can be loaded only in the multi-purpose tray.

🕛 IMPORTANT

When printing heavy paper of A3 size that weighs between 105 and 128 g/m², take out one piece at a time each time it is delivered.

■ Transparency

This printer can print A4 and Letter size transparencies. Load transparencies in the multi-purpose tray.

IMPORTANT

Thoroughly fan the transparencies before loading them as they may stick to each other.

Label

This printer can print A4 and Letter size labels. After checking which is the face of the label, load them with the printing side facing up in the multi-purpose tray.



- Do not use the labels in the following conditions. Using inappropriate labels may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
 - Peeled labels or partly used labels
 - Coated labels that are easily peeled off from the backing sheet
- Labels with uneven adhesive
- When printing labels, take out one piece at a time each time it is delivered.

Envelope

IMPORTANT

This printer can print Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope C5, Envelope Monarch, and Envelope B5. Load the envelopes with the address side (non-glued side) facing up in the multi-purpose tray.





Envelope Monarch 98.0 mm x 191.0 mm (3.86 in. x 7.52 in.)



Envelope C5 162.0 mm x 229.0 mm (6.38 in. x 9.02 in.)



Envelope B5 176.0 mm x 250.0 mm (6.93 in. x 9.84 in.)



*Envelopes (Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope Monarch, Envelope C5) with a flap on the short edge cannot be used.

- Do not use the following types of envelopes. Using inappropriate envelopes may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
 - Envelopes with fasteners or snaps
 - Envelopes with address windows
 - Envelopes with adhesive on the surface
 - Wrinkled or creased envelopes
 - Poorly manufactured envelopes in which the glued parts are uneven
 - Irregularly-shaped envelopes
- Before loading the envelopes, flatten the stack of envelopes to release any remaining air, and press the fold lines along the edges tight.
- Do not print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- Printing speed drops when printing on envelops.

NOTE

When printing envelopes, they may be creased.

Abbreviations of Paper Sizes

The following shows the abbreviations of paper sizes that are marked on the paper cassette and paper size dial:

Paper Size	Marks on Paper Cassette and Paper Size Dial
Ledger	11 X 17
Legal	LGL
Letter	LTR
Executive	EXEC

IMPORTANT

Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated on the paper cassettes of the printer (paper guide) and paper feeders and on the paper size dials, this printer cannot print on paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

Printable Area

The following shows the printable area of this printer:

■ Plain Paper/Heavy Paper/Transparency/Label

The areas within 5 mm from all sides of paper cannot be printed on.



Envelope

Printable up to 10 mm from the edges of an envelope. You may have to change the printable area before printing, depending the application you use.



Unusable Paper

To avoid problems such as paper jams and other malfunctions, the following types of paper should never be used:

IMPORTANT

- Paper that jams easily
 - Paper that is too thick or too thin
 - Irregularly-shaped paper
 - Wet or moist paper
 - Torn or damaged paper
 - Rough, extremely smooth, or glossy paper
 - Paper with binding holes or perforations
 - Curled or creased paper
 - Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
 - Labels with backing sheet that is easily peeled off
- Paper that has been already printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the multi-purpose tray, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the back of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
- Paper with jagged edges
- Wrinkled paper
- Paper with the corners folded
- Paper that changes its quality at a high temperature
 - Paper that contains ink that melts, burns, evaporates or emits harmful gases with the heat (approx. 165 °C or 329 °F) of the fixing unit
 - Heat-sensitive paper
- Treated color paper
- Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
- Paper with adhesive on the surface

- Paper that causes printer malfunctions or damages the printer
 - Carbon paper
 - Paper with staples, clips, ribbons or tapes
 - Paper that has been already printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the multi-purpose tray, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the back of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
- Paper that is difficult for the toner to fix onto
 - Paper with rough surfaces
 - Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
 - Paper containing thick fibers

Storing Paper

The quality of paper may deteriorate if it is stored improperly even when the paper meets the normal specifications. Inferior paper may cause misfeeds, paper jams, or deterioration in print quality.

Observe the following guidelines for storing and handling paper:

🕛 IMPORTANT

- Store paper away from moisture since paper quality deteriorates in a moist environment.
- Paper wrappers help avoiding moisture and dryness. Keep paper in the wrapper until it is ready to be used. Store all unused paper in a wrapper.
- Store paper on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper on the floor where water and moisture can accumulate.
- Avoid physical damage to stored paper.
- Do not store paper vertically or store too many stacks of paper in one pile.
- Avoid direct sunlight and a humid or dry place when storing paper.
- If the paper storage room and work area differ from each other significantly in temperature or humidity, keep packed paper stack in the work area for at least one day prior to printing so that it can adapt to the new environment. When paper is moved to a location where the temperature or humidity differs significantly, the paper may curl or become creased.

Storing Printouts

When handling or storing printouts printed by this printer, be careful of the following points:

- Avoid storing printouts with PVC materials such as clear folders. Toner may melt and stick to the PVC material.
- Use insoluble adhesive when gluing printouts. Toner may melt when insoluble adhesive is used. Before using the adhesive, test it with paper that is no longer required. Confirm that the printouts are completely dry before placing one over another. Toner may melt if they are placed together half-dried.
- Store paper on a flat surface. Toner may peel when they are folded or creased.
- Avoid storing printouts at high temperatures. Otherwise toner may melt and blot.
- Put printouts in a binder when storing them for a long period of time (two years or longer). (Printouts may discolor when they are stored for a long period of time.)

Paper Source

This printer is supplied with two paper sources: the paper cassette (Cassette 1) and multi-purpose tray. By installing optional paper feeders (Cassette 2, Cassette 3, and Cassette 4), up to 5 paper sources can be used.

NOTE

Up to 3 paper feeders can be installed as shown in the figure:



Paper Source Type

This printer has the following paper sources:

■ Paper Source/Capacity

Multi-purpose Tray	100 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Cassette 1	250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Cassette 2	250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Cassette 3	250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Cassette 4	250 sheets (64 g/m ²)

■ Maximum Capacity

1100 sheets (64 g/m²)



Paper Capacity for Paper Source

	Paper Source				
Paper Type	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)	Cassette 3 (Optional)	Cassette 4 (Optional)
Plain Paper (64 g/m ²)	Approx. 100 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy Paper (90 g/m ²)	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets
Heavy Paper (128 g/m ²)	Approx. 50 sheets	Х	Х	Х	Х
Transparency	Approx. 50 sheets	Х	Х	Х	Х
Label	Approx. 50 sheets	х	Х	Х	Х
Envelope	Approx. 10 sheets	Х	Х	Х	Х

A paper source can be selected in the [Paper Source] sheet in the printer driver.

1 Display the [Paper Source] sheet and specify the paper source.

To display the [Paper Source] sheet in the printer driver, see "Specifying the Printing Preferences," on p. 4-9.



2 Specify the following items as needed:

Setting	Setting Value	Description		
Paper	Same Paper for All Pages	Feeds all the pages from the same paper source. If [Auto] is selected for [Paper Source] and [Continue Printing with the Multi-purpose Tray] is checked, the printer automatically switches the paper source to the multi-purpose tray when Cassette 1, 2, 3, or 4 runs out of paper during printing.		
Selection	Different for First, Others, and Last	Paper can be selected for each		
	Different for First, Second, Others, and Last	page, such as for printing the front cover on a different type of		
	Different for Cover and Others*1	paper.		
	Transparency Interleaving	Allows you to place paper sheets between transparencies.		
Paper Source				
First Page	Auto Multi-purpose Trav			
Second Page	Cassette 1			
Cover*1	Cassette 2*2	Select a paper source. Options		
Other Pages	Cassette 4 ^{*2}	to be specified differ depending		
Last Page		on the setting for [Paper Selection].		
Interleaf Sheet	Auto Cassette 1 Cassette 2*2 Cassette 3*2 Cassette 4*2			
Paper Type	Plain Paper Plain Paper L Heavy Paper Heavy Paper L Transparency	Specify the type of paper. (See p. 2-3)		

Setting	Setting Value	Description
Pause when Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray	-	Specify whether the printer should pause a job and display a message or continue the job when feeding paper from the multi-purpose tray.
Continue Printing with the Multi-purpose Tray	-	Specify whether the printer should switch the paper source to the multi-purpose tray automatically when a cassette has run out of paper during a job and the paper specified in [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet is not loaded in any other cassette.

*1 This option can be specified only when the optional duplex unit is installed and [Booklet Printing] is selected for [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet.

*2 This option can be specified only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

Paper Delivery Area 2-15

Paper Delivery Area

Output Tray

Printouts are delivered to the output tray on top of the main unit with the printing side facing down. Printouts are delivered in order of page.





- When printing heavy paper and labels of A3 size that weighs between 105 and 128 g/m², take out one piece at a time each time it is delivered.
- During 2-sided printing, do not touch the paper until it is delivered onto the output tray completely. During 2-sided printing, the paper is first delivered partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.

NOTE

Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m^2) for 1-sided printing or 200 sheets for 2-sided printing can be loaded in the output tray.

■ When delivering paper as large as A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper Pull out the auxiliary tray so that paper will not hang over the edge when delivering long-size paper such as A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper.



Paper Capacity for Paper Delivery Area

The following shows the number of sheets that can be delivered onto the output tray:

Paper Type	Output Tray*1
Plain Paper (Ex. 64 g/m ²)	Approx. 250 sheets (1-sided Printing)/ Approx. 200 sheets (2-sided Printing)
Heavy Paper (Ex. 90 g/m ²)	Approx. 150 sheets
Heavy Paper (Ex. 128 g/m ²)	Approx. 150 sheets ^{*2}
Transparency	Approx. 100 sheets
Label	Approx. 1 sheet
Envelope	Approx. 20 sheets

^{*1} Actual paper capacity varies depending on the installation environment or paper type.

 *2 The paper capacity for A3 size heavy paper that weighs between 105 and 128 g/m² is 1 sheet.

Printing from a Paper Cassette

Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain, standard size paper (64 g/m²) can be loaded in a paper cassette. When the paper source has run out of paper, a message indicating there is no paper appears on the Printer Status Window, and the Paper indicator (red) blinks. In this case, refill paper.

This printer is supplied with a paper cassette (Cassette 1). By installing the optional paper feeders, Cassette 2, 3, and 4 are added.



• Paper that can be loaded in portrait orientation: A3, B4, Legal, Ledger

Landscape orientation



• Paper that can be loaded in landscape orientation: A4, B5, A5, Letter, Executive

IMPORTANT

- Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated on the paper cassettes of the printer (paper guide) and paper feeders and on the paper size dials, this printer cannot print on paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.
- When printing heavy paper (81 90 g/m²) from a cassette, perform the following settings: (1) Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type] in the [Paper Source] sheet.
 - ② Click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then, select [Mode 4] for [Fixing Mode] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

Loading Paper in a Paper Cassette

Different sizes of paper can be loaded in Cassette 1 supplied with the printer and in Cassette 2, 3, and 4 that are available when the optional paper feeders are installed. Then, you can switch among these paper sources automatically.

Since the paper loading procedures for Cassette 1 and for the optional Cassette 2 to 4 differ, load paper properly using the following procedure.

🕛 IMPORTANT

- Follow the instructions below to prevent your printer from paper jams.
 - Do not load media other than plain paper (64 80 g/m²) and heavy paper (81 90 g/m²), such as transparencies, labels, and envelopes. For more details on the paper that can be loaded, see "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2.
 - Do not load paper with jagged edges, creased, or extremely curled paper.
 - Refill the cassette when paper runs out. If the cassette is refilled when paper still remains in the cassette, it may result in misfeeds.
 - Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) or 150 sheets of heavy paper (90 g/m²) can be loaded in the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.
- Do not touch the black rubber pad in the paper cassette. If you touch it, this may result in misfeeds.
 - Cassette 1



2

- Cassette 2, 3, and 4



Ø NOTE

- The installation procedure for the optional 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66A is the same as that for Cassette 1.
- The installation procedure for the optional 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66B is the same as that for Cassette 2, 3, and 4.

Loading Paper in Cassette 1

Ø NOTE

If you want to change the paper size, see "Changing the Size of Paper in a Paper Cassette," on p. 2-32.

Pull out the paper cassette.

If it is difficult to pull out the paper cassette, lift it slightly, and then pull it out horizontally.





Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injuries.

2 Remove the cassette cover.



3 Push down the plate of the paper cassette to lock it.





Do not touch the lock release levers located on each side of the paper cassette when the plate of the paper cassette is locked. The plate may snap forcefully if the lock is released and may result in personal injuries.



4 Load paper so that the edge of the paper is aligned with the front paper guide.





When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

Double-feeding may occur frequently if the edges of the paper stack are not aligned properly. In this case, align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.



Ø NOTE

To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

- When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



- When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



Loading and Delivering Paper

5 Press down both sides of the paper stack so that it is loaded under the hooks on the side paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks and paper stack. Take out some paper when there is no space.



Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) or 150 sheets of heavy paper (90 g/m²) can be loaded in the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

6 Align the paper with the left paper guide.



Be sure to align the paper with the left paper guide. If not, this may result in poor print quality.

7 Set the cassette cover as shown in the figure.



IMPORTANT

Set the cassette cover properly. If the paper cassette is set when the cassette cover is not set properly, you may not be able to pull out the paper cassette.

Ø NOTE

If the paper cassette is extended, set the cassette cover to prevent dust getting into the cassette. The paper cassette can be used without the cassette cover if it is not extended. In this case, keep the cassette cover.

8 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Set the paper cassette referring to the following figure.

If you cannot insert the paper cassette smoothly, check if the cassette cover is set properly. If the paper cassette is set when the cassette cover is not set properly, you may not be able to pull out the paper cassette.

• If the paper cassette is not extended, push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



• If the paper cassette is extended, the front side of the cassette is not flush with the front surface of the printer. Push the paper cassette gently until it stops.



When a message indicating there is no paper appears in the Printer Status Window and the Paper indicator (red) blinks, the printer resumes printing automatically.



The printer looks as shown in the figure below when used with the paper cassettes of the main unit and the optional paper feeders extended.



Loading Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4

NOTE

If you want to change the paper size, see "Changing the Size of Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4," on p. 2-45.

1 Pull out the paper cassette gently until it stops ①, then lift up the front portion of the cassette to remove it ②.





Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the paper feeder before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injuries.

The paper cassette cannot be pulled out horizontally. If you try to pull it out forcefully, this may result in damage to the paper cassette.

2 Load the paper stack so that the rear edge is aligned with the paper guide.



When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

Double-feeding may occur frequently if the edges of the paper stack are not aligned properly. In this case, align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.





To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

- When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



- When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the front of the printer when viewed from the front.



3 Press down the paper stack so that it is loaded under the hooks on the side paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks and paper stack. Take out some paper when there is no space.



Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) or 150 sheets of heavy paper (90 g/m²) can be loaded in the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

Insert the paper cassette obliquely into the paper cassette as shown in the figure ①, and then gently push it horizontally into the paper feeder ②.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the paper feeder.





When a message indicating there is no paper appears in the Printer Status Window and the Paper indicator (red) blinks, the printer resumes printing automatically.



The printer looks as shown in the figure below when used with the paper cassettes of the main unit and the optional paper feeders extended.



Changing the Size of Paper in a Paper Cassette

The size of paper in the paper cassettes can be changed using the following procedure.

Paper sizes that can be loaded in the paper cassettes are A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Legal, Ledger, Letter, and Executive.

IMPORTANT

- Be sure to check if the paper size indicated on the paper guide and on the paper size dial matches that of the loaded paper. If they do not match, this may result in misfeeds or printer malfunction.
- Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated on the paper cassettes of the printer (paper guide) and paper feeders and on the paper size dials, this printer cannot print on paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

Changing the Size of Paper in Cassette 1

Pull out the paper cassette.

If it is difficult to pull out the paper cassette, lift it slightly, and then pull it out horizontally.





Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injuries.

2 Remove the cassette cover.



3 Remove any paper that is left in the paper cassette.



4 Adjust the length of the paper cassette according to the size of the paper to be loaded.

When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, shorten the paper cassette.

When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, extend the paper cassette.

To adjust the length of the paper cassette, push up the lock release levers gently to release the lock, slide the paper cassette by holding the rear portion of the paper cassette, and then push down the lock release levers to lock the cassette.



5 Push down the plate of the paper cassette to lock it.





Do not touch the lock release levers located on each side of the paper cassette when the plate of the paper cassette is locked. The plate may snap forcefully if the lock is released and may result in personal injuries.


6 Tilt the paper guide in the front side of the paper guide backwards (1), then remove it (2).



7 Insert the hooks of the paper guide into the holes for the size of the paper to be loaded ①, tilt the guide forward to lock it ②.



• Insert the hooks of the paper guide as shown in the figure so that the marked paper size is the size of the paper to be loaded. If the paper guide is set in a wrong position, this may result in misfeeds.



• Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated, this printer cannot print paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

8 Align the side paper guides with the size mark for the paper to be loaded.

The side paper guides move together.



Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated, this printer cannot print paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

9 Load paper so that the edge of the paper is aligned with the front paper guide.



When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

Double-feeding may occur frequently if the edges of the paper stack are not aligned properly. In this case, align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.





To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

- When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



- When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



10 Press down both sides of the paper stack so that it is loaded under the hooks on the side paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks and paper stack. Take out some paper when there is no space.



Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) or 150 sheets of heavy paper (90 g/m²) can be loaded in the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

11 Align the paper with the left paper guide.



IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper with the left paper guide. If not, this may result in poor print quality.

12 Open the paper size cover.



13 Set the paper size dial to the size of the loaded paper.

The default is "A4".



- Make sure that the size of the loaded paper matches that indicated by the paper size dial before setting the paper cassette in the printer. If the size indicated by the paper size dial does not match, this may result in printer malfunction.
- Do not set the paper size dial to "-". This may result in printer malfunction.
- If you have set the paper size dial to "FREE", install the optional 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66F (a release date has not yet been set). Set the paper size dial to "FREE" when loading a custom paper size in the paper cassette. If the paper size dial is set to "FREE" when the 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66F that supports custom paper sizes is not installed, or if the paper size of the print data is different from that of the loaded paper, blank areas may appear on the printed paper, part of the images may be missing, or the inside the printer may become dirty.

14 Insert the paper size indicator for the size of the loaded paper into the paper size slot of the paper size cover.



15 Close the paper size cover.



16 Set the cassette cover as shown in the figure.



Set the cassette cover properly. If the paper cassette is set when the cassette cover is not set properly, you may not be able to pull out the paper cassette.

Ø NOTE

If the paper cassette is extended, set the cassette cover to prevent dust getting into the cassette. The paper cassette can be used without the cassette cover if it is not extended. In this case, keep the cassette cover.

17 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Set the paper cassette referring to the following figure.

If you cannot insert the paper cassette smoothly, check if the cassette cover is set properly. If the paper cassette is set when the cassette cover is not set properly, you may not be able to pull out the paper cassette.

• If the paper cassette is not extended, push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



• If the paper cassette is extended, the front side of the cassette is not flush with the front surface of the printer. Push the paper cassette gently until it stops.





The printer looks as shown in the figure below when used with the paper cassettes of the main unit and the optional paper feeders extended.



Changing the Size of Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4

1 Pull out the paper cassette gently until it stops ①, then lift up the front portion of the cassette to remove it ②.





Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the paper feeder before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injuries.

The paper cassette cannot be pulled out horizontally. If you try to pull it out forcefully, this may result in damage to the paper cassette.

2 Remove any paper that is left in the paper cassette.



Adjust the length of the paper cassette according to the size of the paper to be loaded.

When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, shorten the paper cassette.

When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, extend the paper cassette.

To adjust the length of the paper cassette, push up the lock release levers gently to release the lock, slide the paper cassette by holding the rear portion of the paper cassette, and then push down the lock release levers to lock the cassette.



4 While holding the lock release lever of the rear paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the loaded paper.



IMPORTANT

Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated, this printer cannot print paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

5 While holding the lock release lever of the side paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the paper to be loaded.

The side paper guides move together.



IMPORTANT

Although the mark "A4R" is indicated, this printer cannot print paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.

6 Load the paper stack so that the rear edge is aligned with the paper guide.



When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

Double-feeding may occur frequently if the edges of the paper stack are not aligned properly. In this case, align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.



Ø NOTE

To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

- When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



- When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the front of the printer when viewed from the front.



7 Press down the paper stack so that it is loaded under the hooks on the side paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks and paper stack. Take out some paper when there is no space.



Up to approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) or 150 sheets of heavy paper (90 g/m²) can be loaded in the paper cassette. Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

8 Set the paper size dial at the front of the paper feeder to the size of the loaded paper.

The default is "A4".



- Make sure that the size of the loaded paper matches that indicated by the paper size dial before setting the paper cassette in the printer. If the size indicated by the paper size dial does not match, this may result in printer malfunction.
- Do not set the paper size dial to "-". This may result in printer malfunction.
- Although the marks "A4R" and "LTR-R" are indicated on the paper size dial, this printer cannot print paper at sizes of A4R and Letter-R. Paper of A4 and Letter sizes can be loaded only in landscape orientation.
- **9** Attach the label for the size of the loaded paper to the paper size indicator, and insert the guide into the paper size slot at the front of the paper cassette.



10 Insert the paper cassette obliquely into the paper cassette as shown in the figure ①, and then gently push it horizontally into the paper feeder ②.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the paper feeder.





The printer looks as shown in the figure below when used with the paper cassettes of the main unit and the optional paper feeders extended.



Setting Up the Printer Driver and Printing

Follow the procedure below to setup the printer driver:

1 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application. Select this printer for [Name] or [Printer Name], and then click [Properties].



The Properties dialog box for the printer is displayed.

2 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then from [Page Size], select the size of a document that you have created in the application.



3 From [Output Size], select the size of the loaded paper as needed.

Leave the setting at [Match Page Size] when the page size and the size of the paper loaded in the cassette are the same, since there is no need to change the setting.



IMPORTANT

If the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different, the printer produces an enlarged or reduced print automatically.

4 Display the [Paper Source] sheet, then select [Paper Source].

Specify the same setting as the setting for [Paper Source], although the setting for [Paper Source] changes to ones such as [First Page] or [Other Pages] when other than [Same Paper for All Pages] is selected for [Paper Selection].

Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>?</u> ×
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality		
Profile: Default Settings	• 🗐 🗹	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Paper <u>S</u> election:	er for All Pages	•
	Pap <u>e</u> r Source:	Auto Multipuppose Tray Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 3 Cassette 4	
Auto	Paper Type:	Plain Paper	-
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	🏳 Payse when Prin 🗖 Continue Printing	nting from the Multi-purpose Tray gwith the Multi-purpose Tray	
		<u>B</u> estore De	faults
		OK Cancel	Help

5 Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type].



When printing heavy paper $(81 - 90 \text{ g/m}^2)$ from a cassette, perform the following settings after selecting [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type]:

- Click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then, select [Mode 4] for [Fixing Mode] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

Ø NOTE

If paper curls excessively when printed with [Plain Paper] selected, select [Plain Paper L].

6 Click [OK] to close the Properties dialog box.

🐝 Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>? ×</u>
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source (Quality		
Profile: Default Settings	- 🖳 💋	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Paper <u>S</u> election:	er for All Pages	•
	i d <u>es</u> trouter.	Multi-purpose Tray Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 3 Cassette 4	
	Paper Type:	Plain Paper	
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	Payse when Pr	nting from the Multi-purpose Tray	
		g mar are man perpose may	
		<u>R</u> estore	Defaults
		OK Cancel	Help

7 Click [OK] to start printing.



Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray

Approximately 100 sheets of plain paper (64 g/m²) that is 76.2 to 297.0 mm wide and 127.0 to 431.8 mm long can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Paper that cannot be loaded in a paper cassette such as transparencies, labels, and envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

The paper loading procedure varies depending on the paper type. Refer to the respective procedures for each paper type.

- Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label (See "Printing Paper (Other than Envelopes)," on p. 2-58)
- Envelope (See "Printing Envelopes," on p. 2-67)

IMPORTANT

Do not put anything other than the printing paper on the multi-purpose tray. Also, do not press on top of or apply excessive force to the multi-purposes tray. This may result in damage to the multi-purpose tray.

NOTE

Before closing the multi-purpose tray, remove any loaded paper. Keep the multi-purpose tray closed when it is not used.



Printing Paper (Other than Envelopes)

Follow the procedure below to load plain paper, heavy paper, transparencies, or labels in the multi-purpose tray.

- Thoroughly fan the transparencies before loading them as they may stick to each other.
- Do not use the labels in the following conditions. Using inappropriate labels may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
 - Peeled labels or partly used labels
 - Coated labels that are easily peeled off from the backing sheet
 - Labels with uneven adhesive

Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



2 Raise the paper retaining lever.



3 Spread the paper guide a little wider than the actual paper width.



4 Before loading transparencies or labels, fan them in small batches and align the edges.



When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

- Be sure to fan the transparencies or labels thoroughly before loading them. If they are not fanned enough, this may result in double-feeding or paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning the transparencies, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of the transparencies with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

5 Gently load the stack of paper with the printing side facing up until it touches the back of the tray.



When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

- The following shows the paper capacity for the multi-purpose tray. Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks.
- Plain paper: Approx. 100 sheets (64 g/m²)
- Heavy paper: Approx. 50 sheets (128 g/m²)
- Transparency: Approx. 50 sheets
- Label: Approx. 50 sheets
- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the rear edge of the paper stack is not properly aligned, it may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.
- Double-feeding may occur frequently if the edges of the paper stack are not aligned properly. In this case, align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.





To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

- When loading paper in landscape orientation, as when loading A4, B5, A5, Letter, or Executive size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



- When loading paper in portrait orientation, as when loading A3, B4, Ledger, or Legal size paper, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



6 Align the paper guide with both sides of the stack.



• Be sure to align the paper guide with the width of the paper. If the paper guide is too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.





• Do not touch the paper in the multi-purpose tray or pull it out during printing. This may result in an error in the printer.

7 Lower the paper retaining lever.



Proceed to printer driver settings.

8 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application. Select this printer for [Name] or [Printer Name], and then click [Properties].



The Properties dialog box for the printer is displayed.

9 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then from [Page Size], select the size of a document that you have created in the application.

Profile: Default Setting	s <u>1</u> 🔚 🔛	Output <u>M</u> ethod:	Print 💌
] 3	Page Size:	A4	
	A4:	A4 B4	
	- 8.27 in x 11.69 in	A3	
	- Orientation	A2	
	7	A1	1
		AO	
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Shee	ł
	Manual Scaling	1—	
	Scaling	100 - × 125 to 200	
۹4 [Scaling:Auto]			
<u> V</u> iew Settings	☐ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL	
<u> </u>	9		Edjt Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Lavout Options	Bestore Defaults

10 From [Output Size], select the size of the loaded paper as needed.

Select [A4] or [Letter] for printing transparencies or labels.

Leave the setting at [Match Page Size] when the page size and the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray are the same, since there is no need to change the setting.



If the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different, the printer produces an enlarged or reduced print automatically.

11 Display the [Paper Source] sheet and select [Multi-purpose Tray] for [Paper Source].

Specify the same setting as the setting for [Paper Source], although the setting for [Paper Source] changes to ones such as [First Page] or [Other Pages] when other than [Same Paper for All Pages] is selected for [Paper Selection].

🔮 Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>? ×</u>
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source Profile: JE Default Settings	Quality	Output <u>M</u> ethod: 🚳 Print	•
	Paper Selection:	er for All Pages Auto Multicurpose Tray Cassette 2 Cassette 2 Cassette 4	•
Auto A4 [Scaling Auto] View Settings	Paper Type:	Plain Paper nting from the Multi-purpose Tray gytht the Multi-purpose Tray	•
		Besto OKCancel	re Defaults

Ø NOTE

When [Transparency Interleaving] is selected for [Paper Selection], you can interleave paper sheets between the transparencies.

12 Select the paper type specified in [Paper Type].

Select [Plain Paper] for plain paper, [Heavy Paper L] for heavy paper (81 - 105 g/ m²), [Heavy Paper] for heavy paper (106 - 128 g/m²) or labels, and [Transparencies] for transparencies.

Page Setup Finiting Paper Source Quality Profile: Default Settings Quaput Method Print Paper Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Paper Type: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Image: Selection: Ima	🔮 Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>? ×</u>
Project Print Paper Selector: Paper Selector: Same Paper for Al Pages Pager Source: Auto Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 4 Paper Type: Paper Type: Pager Source: Yew Settings Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Paper Type: Pager Source: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Source: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Source: Pager Source: Pager Type: Pager Type:	Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality		
Paper Selection: Paper Source: Paper Source: Paper Source: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper Source: Paper Type: Paper Type: Paper	Profile: 🗾 Default Settings	- 🖫 🗹	Output Method: S Print	•
Pagel source: Pagel source: Pagel source: Pagel source: Cassette 4 Cassette 3 Cassette 4 Pager Type: Pager Type: Pager Man Pager Pager L Heavy Pager Pager L Heavy Pager Restore Defaults Restore Defaults		Paper <u>S</u> election:	er for All Pages	•
Paper Type: Plain Paper A4 (Scaling Auto) Pages when Prin View Settings Controle Printing Image: State Printing Easy Paper Image: Printing Easy Paper		Pap <u>e</u> r Source:	Multi-purpose Tray Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 3 Cassette 4	
View Settings Continue Printing Heavy Paper L I Heavy Paper L I Antiparencies Restore Defaults	Auto A4 [Scaling:Auto]	Paper Type:	Plain Paper Plain Paper Plain Paper L Heave Baser	
	View Settings	Continue Printin	Heavy Paper L Transparencies	

13 Click [OK] to close the Properties dialog box.

📽 Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>?</u> ×
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality		
Profile: 🔎 Default Settings	- 🖳 🗹	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Paper <u>S</u> election:	per for All Pages	•
	Paper Source:	Auto Multipurpose Tray Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 3 Cassette 4	
Auto	Paper Type:	Plain Paper	
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	F Payse when Pr	inting from the Multi-purpose Tray n <u>g wi</u> th the Multi-purpose Tray	
		<u>B</u> estore	Defaults
		OK Cancel	Help

14 Click [OK] to start printing.

Properties
Print to file
Preview
k──── 209.97 ─────≯
Canon
Ver4
Reverse pages LASER SHOT
User's Guide
296.93
236.33
·
Promute.
e size
e size
Units: mm Zoom: 100%
Pionaria

Printing Envelopes

Envelopes at sizes of DL, COM10, C5, Monarch, and B5 can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Follow the procedure below to load envelopes in the multi-purpose tray.



*Envelopes (Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope Monarch, Envelope C5) with a flap on the short edge cannot be used.

- Do not use the following types of envelopes. Using inappropriate envelopes may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
 - Envelopes with fasteners or snaps
 - Envelopes with address windows
 - Envelopes with adhesive on the surface
 - Wrinkled or creased envelopes
 - Poorly manufactured envelopes in which the glued parts are uneven
 - Irregularly-shaped envelopes
- Before loading the envelopes, flatten the stack of envelopes to release any remaining air, and press the fold lines along the edges tight.
- Do not print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- Printing speed drops when printing on envelops.

🥟 NOTE

When printing envelopes, they may be creased.

1 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



2 Raise the paper retaining lever.



3 Spread the paper guide a little wider than the actual envelope width.



4 Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface, flatten them to release any remaining air, and be sure that the edges are pressed tightly.





When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

5 Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.



6 Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.



7 Gently load the stack of envelopes with the address side facing up until it touches the back of the multi-purpose tray as shown in the figure.



- Up to 10 sheets of envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Make sure that the envelope stack does not exceed the load limit marks.
- You cannot print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- When loading envelopes at sizes of DL, COM10, C5, or Monarch, load them so that the flap is toward the left of the printer when viewed from the front.



• When loading envelopes at size of Envelope B5, leave the flaps open and load them so that the bottom of the envelopes is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.


8 Align the paper guide with both sides of the stack.



IMPORTANT

- Make sure that there is no space between the paper guide and the envelopes, and be careful not to press the envelopes so hard that they are distorted. They may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- Do not touch the envelopes in the multi-purpose tray or pull them out during printing. This may result in an error in the printer.

9 Lower the paper retaining lever.



Proceed to printer driver settings.

10 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application. Select this printer for [Name] or [Printer Name], and then click [Properties].



The Properties dialog box for the printer is displayed.

11 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then from [Page Size], select the size of a document that you have created in the application.





If you select any of [Envelope DL], [Envelope COM10], [Envelope C5], [Envelope Monarch], or [Envelope B5] for the page size, a message appears and the appropriate paper type is automatically set.

12 From [Output Size], select the size of the loaded paper as needed.

Leave the setting at [Match Page Size] when the page size and the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray are the same, since there is no need to change the setting.

Canon LBP3600 Properties Page Setup Finishing Paper Source Profile:	Quality	2 🗴 Output Method 🚳 Print 💌
Envelope COM10 (ScalingAuto) View Settings	Page Size: Copies: Distintation - 1560 mm x 2410 - 410 in x 245 in Page Layout: Magual Scaling Scaling Colory	Envelope COM10
	Cystom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>R</u> estore Defaults

IMPORTANT

If the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different, the printer produces an enlarged or reduced print automatically.

13 Click [OK] to close the Properties dialog box.

Profile: 🗾 Default Settings	- 🖫 🗹	Output <u>M</u> ethod: 🚳 F	rint 💌
]3	Page Size: Output Size: <u>C</u> opies: Orientation	Envelope COM10 Match Page Size	A) 🤉 Landscape
	Page Layout: I Magual Scaling Scaling:	1 Page per Sheet	
nvelope COM10 [Scaling:Auto] View Settings	 □ □ <u>₩</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL	Edjt Watermark
	Friston Paper Size	Laugut Options	Bestore Defaults

14 Click [OK] to start printing.

Print	<u>?</u> ×
Printer	
Name: Canon LBP3600	Eropercies
Status: Ready	Print to file
Type: Canon LBP3600	
Print Range	Preview 104.99 K
C Current view	
C Cyrrent page	
C Pages from: Cover1 to: Cover4	
Subset: All pages in range 💿 🗖 Reverse pages	
	LASER SHOT
Page Handling	the second se
Copies: 1	240.96
Page Scaling: Shrink large pages	
Auto- <u>R</u> otate and Center	
Choose Paper Source by PDF page size	
Print What: Document	Units: mm Zoom: 48%
Printing Tips Advanced	OK Cancel

2-sided Printing

This printer allows you to perform automatic 2-sided printing by installing the duplex unit. Plain paper (64 - 80 g/m²) and heavy paper (81 - 90 g/m²) of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Legal, Ledger (11 x 17), Letter, and Executive sizes can be used for automatic 2-sided printing.

- You cannot perform automatic 2-sided printing on custom paper sizes, heavy paper (91 128 g/m²), transparencies, labels, and envelopes.
- During 2-sided printing, do not touch the paper until it is delivered onto the output tray completely. During 2-sided printing, the paper is first delivered partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.
- \bullet When performing automatic 2-sided printing on heavy paper (81 90 g/m²), perform the following settings:
 - ① Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type] in the [Paper Source] sheet.
 - ② Click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then, select [Mode 4] for [Fixing Mode] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

Ø NOTE

- When the last page for the 2-sided printing is 1-sided printing, the printer prints faster than normal 2-sided printing by clicking the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then placing a checkmark for [Print Last Page in 1-sided Mode when 2-sided Printing is Set] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box. However, when printing punched paper or previously printed paper, the orientation or printing surface of the last page may differ from other pages. In this case, remove the checkmark.
- When paper jams occur frequently during 2-sided printing, display the Printer Status Window, select [Device Settings] from the [Options] menu, and then place a checkmark for [2-sided Special Mode]. Printing speed will be slower than when performing regular 2-sided printing.

1 Load paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette.

On automatic 2-sided printing, the reverse side of the paper is printed first, therefore the paper should be loaded in the opposite orientation to that for 1-sided printing. When printing paper such as a letterhead in which faces and directional orientations specified, see "Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing," on p. 2-80.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application. Select this printer for [Name] or [Printer Name], and then click [Properties].



The Properties dialog box for the printer is displayed.

3 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then from [Page Size], select the size of a document that you have created in the application.



4 From [Output Size], select the size of the loaded paper as needed.

Leave the setting at [Match Page Size] when the page size and the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray are the same, since there is no need to change the setting.



If the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different, the printer produces an enlarged or reduced print automatically.

5 Display the [Finishing] sheet and select [2-sided Printing] for [Print Style].

🌮 Canon LBP3600 Properties			?)
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality		
Profile: 🔎 Default Settings	- 🖫 🗹	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Print Style	1-sided Printing 2-sided Printing Booklet Printing aper Sizes/Orientations	Booklet
	Binding Location:	Left]	<u>G</u> utter
A3 > A4 (Scaling:Auto] View Settings	ê î	Off Collate	store Defaulte
		OK Cancel	

6 Click [OK] to close the Properties dialog box.



7 Click [OK] to start printing.



Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing

On automatic 2-sided printing, the reverse side of the paper is printed first, therefore the paper should be loaded in the opposite orientation to that for 1-sided printing. When printing paper such as a letterhead in which faces and directional orientations specified, load the paper using the following procedure:

Loading Paper in a Paper Cassette

When loading paper such as A4 or Letter size paper in landscape orientation in the standard cassette (Cassette 1)

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



When loading paper such as A3 or B4 size paper in portrait orientation in the standard cassette (Cassette 1)

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



When loading paper such as A4 or Letter size paper in landscape orientation in the paper cassette of a paper feeder (Cassette 2, 3, or 4) Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



■ When loading paper such as A3 or B4 size paper in portrait orientation in the paper cassette of a paper feeder (Cassette 2, 3, or 4)

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the front of the printer when viewed from the front.



When Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

When loading paper such as A4 or Letter size paper in landscape orientation

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



■ When loading paper such as B4 or A3 size paper in portrait orientation

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



Performing 2-sided Printing Manually

Since this printer can print the reverse side of previously printed paper, you can print both sides of the paper to which automatic 2-sided printing cannot be applied.

NOTE

If a paper jam occurs when printing the reverse side of previously printed paper, click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then place a checkmark for [Print on the Back of Printed Paper from the Multi-purpose Tray] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

When loading paper such as A4 or Letter size paper in landscape orientation in the multi-purpose tray

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the right of the printer when viewed from the front.



■ When loading paper such as A3 or B4 size paper in portrait orientation in the multi-purpose tray

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing up and the top edge is toward the back of the printer when viewed from the front.



Setting Up the Printing Environment 3

This chapter describes the procedure for installing the printer driver in a computer and specifying the settings for printing from a network computer by sharing the printer on the network.

Introduction	
After Installing the Printer	
Steps for Printing to be Followed Each Time	ے-د ۲-۲
Installing the CAPT Software	
For Windows 98/Me	3-5
For Windows 2000	3-21
For Windows XP/Server 2003	3-36
After Completing Installation	3-52
Checking the Operations by Printer Status Print	3-54
Printing from a Network Computer by Sharing the Printer on a Network	3-57
Print Server Settings	3-58
Installation on the Clients	3-67
Uninstalling the CAPT Software	

Introduction

After Installing the Printer

The following shows the tasks that should be performed after installing the printer:

Installing the printer driver

The printer driver is software required for printing from an application you use. Specify the print settings in the printer driver. The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on the network environment.

- When printing with the printer and computer connected with the USB cable (See p. 3-4)
- When printing with the optional network board installed, and the printer and the computer connected with LAN (See Network Guide)

■ Sharing the printer on a network (See p. 3-57)

If you share this printer on a network and use it from a computer on the network, you must specify the settings for the computer and install the printer driver on the client computers.

Steps for Printing to Be Followed Each Time

The following shows the tasks that should be performed each time you print:

Specifying printing preferences

Specify the paper size, document size, and print copies in the printer driver. If you do not specify these printing preferences properly, you may not obtain an accurate print.

Performing printing

Select the print menu from the application. This procedure differs depending on the application you use. See the instruction manual supplied with your application.

Required System Environment

The following system environment is required to use the printer driver:

Operating system software environment

- Microsoft Windows 98
- Microsoft Windows Me
- Microsoft Windows 2000 Server/Professional
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional/Home Edition
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (32-bit processor version only)
- System Requirements (minimum required)

	Windows 98/Me	Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003
CPU	Pentium II 300 MHz or more	Pentium II 300 MHz or more
Memory (RAM)*	64 MB or more	128 MB or more
Hard disk	40 MB or more	Windows 2000: 60 MB or more Windows XP/Server 2003: 70 MB or more

(PC/AT Compatible)

- * As the amount of memory that can be actually used differs depending on the system configuration of your computer or your application, the above environment does not guarantee printing in all cases.
- System Requirements (recommended)

	Windows 98/Me	Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003
СРИ	Pentium III 600 MHz or more	Pentium III 600 MHz or more
Memory (RAM)	128 MB or more	256 MB or more

Interface Environment

• USB: USB 2.0 High-Speed (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only), USB Full-Speed (USB 1.1 equivalent)

Ø NOTE

- When using Sound, a PC synthesizer (and the driver for PCM synthesizer) must be installed in your computer. Do not use a PC Speaker driver (speaker.drv).
- Your system environment is required to support two-way communication.

Installing the CAPT Software

This section describes the procedure for installing the CAPT software when connecting this printer to your computer with a USB cable.

- For Windows 98/Me (See p. 3-5)
- For Windows 2000 (See p. 3-21)
- For Windows XP/Server 2003 (See p. 3-36)

🕛 IMPORTANT

- The CAPT software is required for printing with this printer. Be sure to install the CAPT software.
- When there is not enough free hard disk space, the following dialog box will appear during the installation. In this case, click [OK] to stop the installation and increase the free space, and then install the CAPT software again.

记 Warning	×
There is not enough space	on the disk.
Retry	Cancel

🧷 NOTE

- For details on the procedure for installing the software when installing the optional network board and connecting the printer to the computer with LAN, see "Network Guide".
- For details on procedure for installing the software when sharing this printer on a network and printing from a computer on the network, see "Printing from a Network Computer by Sharing the Printer on a Network," on p. 3-57.
- This printer does not come with a USB cable. Have the appropriate one available for your computer.

The screen shots used in this section are from Windows Me.

Installing from CD-ROM Setup

1 Make sure that the printer is turned OFF and the computer and printer are not connected with a USB cable.

- Connect the USB cable at the appropriate point (Step 11 on p. 3-8) during the installation, and then turn the power ON.
- If a Wizard appears by the Plug and Play automatic setup, click [Cancel], and then install the CAPT software using this procedure.

2 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows 98/ Me.

3 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD-ROM is already set in the drive, take it out and insert it into the drive again.

CD-ROM Setup appears automatically.

IMPORTANT

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear, select [Run] from the [Start] menu, enter "D:\English\CNAB1MNU.exe", and then click [OK]. (The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.)

4 Click [Install].

🎭 Canon LBP3600 CD-ROM Setup		
Canon	CAPT CD-ROM Setup	
CD-ROM Setup Help	Manuals	
Instal		
README File		
Always Display when CD is Inserted		
		Exit

The dialog box for confirming the language is displayed.

5 Confirm the language and click [Yes].

Canon LBP3600 CD-ROM Setup
The printer driver for the following language will be installed. Do you want to continue?
Language: English
<u>Yes</u> <u>N</u> o

After the preparation for installation is completed, the CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology) software installer starts up, and the [Setup Wizard] dialog box appears.

6 Click [Next].



The [License Agreement] dialog box is displayed.

7 Confirm the contents and select [I accept the terms in the license agreement], and then click [Next].

License Agreement	f.	Ē.
Please read the following license agr	reement carefully.	Ĩ
UNDERSTOOD IT, AND AGREE TO BE B	OUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. YOU ALSO	
AGREE THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND CANC	COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF IN CONCERNING THE SUBJECT MATTER HEREOF AND	
SUPERSEDES ALL PROPOSALS OR PRIC	OR AGREEMENTS, VERBAL OR WRITTEN, AND ANY	
OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN Y HEREOF. NO AMENDMENT TO THIS AG	OU AND CANON RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER.	
DULY AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE C	OF CANON.	
Should you have any questions concern	aing this Agreement, or if you desire to contact Canon	
for any reason, please write to Canon's country where you obtained the Produc	s sales subsidiary or distributor/dealer, serving the cts.	-
• I accept the terms in the license agr	eement	
T To not arrebt the terms in the inter	ise agreenient	
stallShield		

8 Select [Manually Set Port to Install], then click [Next].



9 Place a checkmark for [Install Printer Driver through a USB Connection], then click [Next].

CAPT Printer Driver - Setup Wizard	×
Select USB Connection	
Check the check box below only when you want to install Printer Driver through a USB connection, and then click Next.	
☞ Install Printer Driver through a USB Connection	
stali5hield	
< <u>Back</u> Next > C	ancel

Depending on the environment, a message that prompts you to restart the computer may appear. In this case, restart the computer and continue the installation.

10 The message "Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?" is displayed. Click [Yes].



11 After the window shown below is displayed, connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable, then turn the power of the printer ON.



Connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable.



Press "I" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



Installation of the USB class driver and the printer driver starts automatically.

NOTE

If the printer is not recognized automatically even after the USB cable is connected, see "Installation Problems," on p. 7-50.

12 The window that informs you the completion of the installation is displayed. Select [Restart my computer now], then click [Exit].



Windows restarts.

The installation of the USB class driver and the printer driver is completed.

Installing with Plug and Play

IMPORTANT

Before installing the CAPT software with Plug and Play, make sure that the printer is properly connected to the computer and the power of the printer is turned ON.

1 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows 98/ Me.

The [Add New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears.

• For Windows Me

If the following dialog box appears, proceed to Step 2.

Add New Hardware Wi	zard Windows has found the following new hardware: Canon CAPT USB Device
	Windows can automatically search for and install software that supports your hardware. If your hardware cane with installation media, insert it now and click Next. What would you like to do? <u>Automatic search for a better driver (Recommended)</u> <u>Specify the location of the driver (Advanced)</u>
	< Back Next > Cancel

If the following dialog box appears, proceed to Step 9.

Add New Hardware Wizard	
	Windows has found the following new hardware: Canon LBP3600 Windows can automatically search for and install software that supports your hardware. If your hardware came with installation media, insert it now and click Next. What would you like to do? © [<u>Automatic search for a better driver (Recommended</u>] © [Specify the location of the driver (Advanced)
< <u>Back</u> Next> Cancel	

• For Windows 98

If the following dialog box appears, click [Next], then proceed to Step 2.



If the following dialog box appears, click [Next], then proceed to Step 9.

Add New Hardware Wizard	
	This wizard searches for new drivers for:
	Canon LBP3600
	A device driver is a software program that makes a hardware device work.
	< Back Next > Cancel

2 Select [Specify the location of the driver (Advanced)], then click [Next].

For Windows 98: Select [Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended)], then click [Next].



The dialog box for specifying the search location is displayed.

3 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].

4 Select [Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended).], remove the checkmark from [Removable Media (Floppy, CD-ROM...)], place a checkmark for [Specify a location], and then click [Browse].

For Windows 98: Remove the checkmarks from [Floppy disk drives] and [CD-ROM drive], place a checkmark for [Specify a location], and then click [Browse].

Add New Hardware Wi	zard Windows will search for new drivers in its driver database on your hard drive, and in any of the following selected (* Search for the best driver for your device. [Recommended]. Removable Media (Rippy, CD-RDM] (* Specify a jocation; 1 * Browse Browse Display a list of all the drivers in a specific location, so you can select the driver you want.
	< <u>₿</u> ack Next> Cancel

5 Select [D:\English\USBPORT\WinMe], and then click [OK].

For Windows 98: Select [D:\English\USBPORT\Win98], and then click [OK].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.

Browse for Folder	? ×
Select the folder that contains driver information (.INF this device.	file) for
🗄 🏩 CANONLBP3600 (G:)	-
😑 🧰 English	_
- 🙆 Manuals	
😟 🧰 MISC	
- C SEAMLESS	
🖻 🧰 USBPORT	
Print_Monitor_Installer	
🗄 🗟 Control Panel	
In All Mu Network Places	-
ОК Са	ancel

6 Make sure that the folder to be browsed is displayed for [Specify a location], and then click [Next].



7 Click [Next].



Installation of the USB class driver starts.

8 Click [Finish].



The printer is detected automatically. Please wait until it is completed.

The [Add New Hardware Wizard] dialog box appears. For Windows 98, click [Next].



9 Select [Specify the location of the driver (Advanced)], then click [Next].

For Windows 98: Select [Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended)], then click [Next].



The dialog box for specifying the search location is displayed.

10 If the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM is not in the CD-ROM drive, insert the "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].

11 Select [Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended).], remove the checkmark from [Removable Media (Floppy, CD-ROM...)], place a checkmark for [Specify a location], and then click [Browse].

For Windows 98: Remove the checkmarks from [Floppy disk drives] and [CD-ROM drive], place a checkmark for [Specify a location], and then click [Browse].

Add New Hardware Wizard	
	Windows will search for new drivers in its driver database on your hard drive, and in any of the following selected Search for the best driver for your device. (Recommended). Benovable Media (Roppy, CD-ROM) Specify a Jocation: Browse Browse C Display a list of all the drivers in a specific location, so you can select the driver you want.
< Back Next > Cancel	

12 Select [D:\English\Win98_Me], and then click [OK].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.



13 Make sure that the folder to be browsed is displayed for [Specify a location], and then click [Next].



14 Click [Next].



15 Enter a new name in [Printer name] if you want to change the printer name.

If another printer driver has been already installed in the computer, the message "Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?" appears. In this case, select [Yes] or [No].

Add Printer Wizard	
	You can type a name for this printer, or you can use the name supplied below. When you are ready, click Finish to install the printer and add it to the Printers rolder. Printer name:
	Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer? C Yes C No
	Kack Finish Cancel

16 Click [Finish].

Copying files is started.

17 When the dialog box for completing installation appears, click [OK].



18 Click [Finish].



The installation of the USB class driver and the printer driver is completed.

Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]

NOTE

When installing the CAPT software from [Add Printer Wizard], the USB port for connecting this printer has to have already been registered.

From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Printers] to open the [Printers] folder. Then, double-click the [Add Printer] icon.

The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is displayed.

Ø NOTE

The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is also displayed using the following procedure:

- Double-click [My Computer] → [Control Panel] → [Printers] → [Add Printer] (For Windows Me).
- Double-click [My Computer] → [Printers] → [Add Printer] (For Windows 98).

2 Click [Next].



3 Select [Local printer], then click [Next].



NOTE

This window does not appear when the network settings are not configured.

4 Click [Have Disk].



5 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, then click [Browse].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].

Install Fr	om Disk	×
_	Insert the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive selected, and then click OK.	OK Cancel
	Copy manufacturer's files from: D:V	Browse

6 Select [D:\English\Win98_Me], and then click [OK].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.

Open		? ×
File name:	Eolders:	ОК
CNAB1STA.inf	G-(English(U/in99 Ma	Cancel
	English	N <u>e</u> twork
	😋 Win98_Me	
	-	
	Drives:	,
	() d: ▼	

7 Confirm the contents of [Copy manufacturer's files from], then click [OK].

For example, when your CD-ROM drive is drive [D:], it is displayed as [D:\English\Win98_Me].



"Canon LBP3600" is displayed in the [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box.





9 Select the USB port for connecting this printer, and then click [Next].



10 Enter a new name in [Printer name] if you want to change the printer name.

If another printer driver has been already installed in the computer, the message "Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?" appears. In this case, select [Yes] or [No].

Add Printer Wizard	You can type a name for this printer, or you can use
	the name supplied below. When you are ready, click Finish to install the printer and add it to the Printers folder.
	Printer name:
	Canon LBP3600
	Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
	C Yes
	© <u>N</u> o
	< <u>B</u> ack Finish Cancel

11 Click [Finish].

Copying files is started.

12 When the dialog box for completing installation appears, click [OK].

13 If the printer and computer are not connected, connect them with a USB cable, and then turn the power of the printer ON.

The installation of the printer driver is completed.

For Windows 2000

Installing from CD-ROM Setup

Make sure that the printer is turned OFF and the computer and printer are not connected with a USB cable.

IMPORTANT

- Connect the USB cable at the appropriate point (Step 12 on p. 3-25) during the installation, and then turn the power ON.
- If a Wizard appears by the Plug and Play automatic setup, click [Cancel], and then install the CAPT software using this procedure.

2 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows 2000.

Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

Ø NOTE

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

4 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD-ROM is already set in the drive, take it out and insert it into the drive again.

CD-ROM Setup appears automatically.

IMPORTANT

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear, select [Run] from the [Start] menu, enter "D:\English\CNAB1MNU.exe", and then click [OK]. (The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.)

5 Click [Install].

CAPT CD-ROM Setup
Manuals
Exit

The dialog box for confirming the language is displayed.

6 Confirm the language and click [Yes].



After the preparation for installation is completed, the CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology) software installer starts up, and the [Setup Wizard] dialog box appears.

7 Click [Next].



The [License Agreement] dialog box is displayed.

8 Confirm the contents and select [I accept the terms in the license agreement], and then click [Next].


9 Select [Manually Set Port to Install], then click [Next].



10 Place a checkmark for [Install Printer Driver through a USB Connection], then click [Next].



11 The message "Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?" is displayed. Click [Yes].



12 After the window shown below is displayed, connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable, then turn the power of the printer ON.



Connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable.



Press "I" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



Installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver starts automatically.

NOTE

If the printer is not recognized automatically even after the USB cable is connected, see "Installation Problems," on p. 7-50.

13 The window that informs you the completion of the installation is displayed. Select [Restart my computer now], then click [Exit].

CAPT Printer Driver - Setup Wizard Installation is complete.	(89)
Click Exit to quit the wizard.	
Restart my computer now	
C Restart my computer later	
stallShield	(Evit

Windows restarts.

The installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver is completed.

Installing with Plug and Play

IMPORTANT

Before installing the CAPT software with Plug and Play, make sure that the printer is properly connected to the computer and the power of the printer is turned ON.

1 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows 2000.

2 Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

NOTE

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

3 Click [Next].



4 Select [Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)], then click [Next].



NOTE

"Unknown" may be displayed as the name of the device.

5 Remove the checkmarks from [Floppy disk drives] and [CD-ROM drives], place a checkmark for [Specify a location], and then click [Next].

La	where do you want Windows to search for driver files?
	Search for driver files for the following hardware device:
	Canon LBP3600
	The wizard searches for suitable drivers in its driver database on your computer and in any of the following optional search locations that you specify.
	To start the search, click Next. If you are searching on a floppy disk or CD-ROM drive, insert the floppy disk or CD before clicking Next.
	Optional search locations:
	🗖 Floppy disk drives
	Specify a location
	pdate

6 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, then click [Browse].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



7 Select [D:\English\Win2K_XP]. Then select [CNAB1STK.INF] and click [Open].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.



8 Make sure that the folder to be browsed is displayed for [Copy manufacturer's files from], then click [OK].



The dialog box for completing the search for a driver file is displayed.

9 Click [Next].



Copying files is started.

Then, [Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard] appears.

NOTE

If the [Digital Signature Not Found] dialog box appears, click [Yes].

10 Click [Finish].



The installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver is completed.

Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]

IMPORTANT

When printing a test page, make sure that the printer is properly connected to the computer and the power of the printer is turned ON before installing the CAPT software.

🧷 NOTE

When installing the CAPT software from [Add Printer Wizard], the USB port for connecting this printer has to have already been registered.

1 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows 2000.

2 Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

If a Wizard appears by the Plug and Play automatic setup, click [Cancel], and then install the CAPT software using this procedure.

NOTE

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

3 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Printers] to open the [Printers] folder. Then, double-click [Add Printer].

The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is displayed.

Ø NOTE

The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is also displayed by double-clicking [My Computer] \rightarrow [Control Panel] \rightarrow [Printers] \rightarrow [Add Printer].

4 Click [Next].

Add Printer Wizard	
	Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard This wizad helps you instal a printer or make printer connections. To continue, click Next.
	< Back

5 Make sure that [Local printer] is selected, then click [Next].



Ø NOTE

Do not place a checkmark for [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer].

6 Select the USB port for connecting this printer, and then click [Next].

e Printer uters comm the port yo ort.	Port nunicate with printers	through ports.	
the port yo	ou want your printer t		
e the follow	ving port:	o use. If the port is not iis	ted, you can create a
Port	Description	Printer	
:OM3: :OM4:	Serial Port Serial Port		
ISB001	Virtual printer port	or	
te: Most o	omputere use the LP	T1: port to communicate (with a local printer
eate a new	port:	The point to commanicate t	wara local plinel.
pe	Canon CAP	T Port	Υ.
		/ Back	Next > Cancel
	ort. e the follow OM3: OM4: SB001 te: Most c seate a new pe:	e the following port: ort Description OM3: Serial Port OM4: Serial Port SB001 Vitual primer port Vitual primer port te: Most computers use the LP per Canon CAP	et the following port: ort Description Printer OM3. Serial Port OM4. Serial Port SE001 Vetual printer port for SE001 Vetual printer port for te: Most computers use the LPT1: port to communicate to per Canon CAPT Port Canon CAPT Port

7 Click [Have Disk].

Add Printer Wizard The manufacture	and model determine which printer to use.	
Select the mar disk, click Hav compatible prin	ufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came wi e Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer docu er. Printerer	ith an installation umentation for a
Alps Apollo Apple APS-PS AST AT2.T	AGFA-Accude ty 52.3 AGFA-Accude 645F y52.3 AGFA-Accude 8005F y52.3 AGFA-Accude 8005F y52.3 AGFA-Accude 8005F y2013.108 AGFA-Accude 1000F y2013.108	-
	<u>Windows Update</u>	<u>H</u> ave Disk

8 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, and then click [Browse].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



9 Select [D:\English\Win2K_XP]. Select [CNAB1STK.INF], then click [Open].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.

ocate File			1. 7		?
Look jn:	🔁 Win2K_XP		• 🗢	£ 💣 🎟 •	·
iistory	CNAB1STK.IF				
Desktop					
My Documents					
My Computer					-
	File <u>n</u> ame:	CNAB1STK		- (<u>O</u> pen
ny Network P	Files of type:	Setup Information (*.inf)		-	Cancel

10 Confirm the contents of [Copy manufacturer's files from], then click [OK].

For example, when your CD-ROM drive is drive [D:], it is displayed as [D:\English\Win2K_XP].

Install Fr	om Disk	×
_ _ _	Insert the manufacturer's installation disk into the drive	ОК
]	Cancel
	Conv manufacturer's files from:	
	D:\English\Win2K_XP	Browse

"Canon LBP3600" is displayed in the [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box.

11 Click [Next].

bh0	Printer Wizard
1	he manufacturer and model determine which printer to use.
S.	Select the manufacturer and model of your printer. If your printer came with an installation disk, click Have Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your printer documentation for a compabile printer.
nters:	
202000	
	LEP-3600
	LEPPORUU
	Windows Update Have Disk

12 Enter a new name in [Printer name] if you want to change the printer name, then click [Next].

If another printer driver has been already installed in the computer, the message "Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?" appears. In this case, select [Yes] or [No].

id Prin	ter Wizard
Nam	e Your Printer You must assign a name for this printer.
9	upply a name for this printer. Some programs do not support server and printer name ombinations of more than 31 characters.
(Division and Canon LBP3601
0	to you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?
	C Ng

13 Click [Next].

rinter Sharing You can share	e this printer with other network users.
Indicate wheth printer, you mu	er you want this printer to be available to other users. If you share this as provide a share name.
Do not sha	are this printer
C Share as:	
_	,
	< Back Next> Can

Ø NOTE

When sharing this printer on a network, select [Share as], then click [Next]. The window for entering [Location] and [Comment] is displayed. Enter them as necessary, then click [Next].

14 When printing a test page, click [Yes], then click [Next].



15 Click [Finish].



Copying files is started.

When printing a test page, a dialog box will appear after printing. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.

NOTE

If the [Digital Signature Not Found] dialog box appears, click [Yes].

16 If the printer and computer are not connected, connect them with a USB cable, and then turn the power of the printer ON.

The installation of the printer driver is completed.

For Windows XP/Server 2003

The screen shots used in this section are from Windows XP.

Installing from CD-ROM Setup

1 Make sure that the printer is turned OFF and the computer and printer are not connected with a USB cable.

- Connect the USB cable at the appropriate point (Step 12 on p. 3-40) during the installation, and then turn the power ON.
- If a Wizard appears by the Plug and Play automatic setup, click [Cancel], and then install the CAPT software using this procedure.

2 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows XP/ Server 2003.

3 Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

NOTE 🖉

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

4 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD-ROM is already set in the drive, take it out and insert it into the drive again.

CD-ROM Setup appears automatically.

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear, select [Run] from the [Start] menu, enter "D:\English\CNAB1MNU.exe", and then click [OK]. (The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.)

5 Click [Install].



The dialog box for confirming the language is displayed.

6 Confirm the language and click [Yes].



After the preparation for installation is completed, the CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology) software installer starts up, and the [Setup Wizard] dialog box appears.

7 Click [Next].



The [License Agreement] dialog box is displayed.

8 Confirm the contents and select [I accept the terms in the license agreement], and then click [Next].



9 Select [Manually Set Port to Install], then click [Next].



10 Place a checkmark for [Install Printer Driver through a USB Connection], then click [Next].



11 The message "Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?" is displayed. Click [Yes].



12 After the window shown below is displayed, connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable, then turn the power of the printer ON.



Connect the printer to the computer with the USB cable.



Press "I" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



Installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver starts automatically.

NOTE

If the printer is not recognized automatically even after the USB cable is connected, see "Installation Problems," on p. 7-50.

13 The window that informs you the completion of the installation is displayed. Select [Restart my computer now], then click [Exit].



Windows restarts.

The installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver is completed.

Installing with Plug and Play

Before installing the CAPT software with Plug and Play, make sure that the printer is properly connected to the computer and the power of the printer is turned ON.

1 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows XP/ Server 2003.

Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

🧷 NOTE

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

3 Insert the "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], then click [Next].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



4 Select [Search for the best driver in these locations.], remove the checkmark from [Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM...)], place a checkmark for [Include this location in the search:], and then click [Browse].

ind New H Please chi	lardware Wizord Dose your search and installation options.
● <u>S</u> ear Use path: □	ch for the best driver in these locations. he check boxes below to limit or expand the default search, which includes local and removable media. The best driver found will be installed.] Search removable gedia (floppy, CD-ROM)] Include this (goation in the search: Browse
O Don' Choo the d	t search. I will choose the driver to install. se this option to select the device driver from a list. Windows does not guarantee t river you choose will be the best match for your hardware.
	< <u>B</u> ack Next> Cancel

5 Select [D:\English\Win2K_XP], and then click [OK].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.

🖃 🍰 CANONLBP3600 (D:)	^
🖃 🧰 English	
🚞 Manuals	
🔳 🚞 MISC	
C SEAMLESS	
I CO USBPORT	
Win2K XP	
Co Win98 Me	

6 Make sure that the folder to be browsed is displayed for [Include this location in the search], then click [Next].



The installation process is displayed.

Then, [Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard] is displayed.

NOTE

If the [Hardware Installation] dialog box appears, click [Continue Anyway].

7 Click [Finish].

Completing the Found New Hardware Wizard
The wizard has finished installing the software for:
Canon LBP3600
Click Finish to close the wizard.

The installation of the USB class driver (supplied with OS) and the printer driver is completed.

Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]

IMPORTANT

When printing a test page, make sure that the printer is properly connected to the computer and the power of the printer is turned ON before installing the CAPT software.

NOTE

When installing the CAPT software from [Add Printer Wizard], the USB port for connecting this printer has to have already been registered.

1 Turn the power of the computer on and start up Windows XP/ Server 2003.

IMPORTANT

If a Wizard appears by the Plug and Play automatic setup, click [Cancel], and then install the CAPT software using this procedure.

2 Log on as a user who is a member of Administrators.

NOTE

Full Control Permission is required for the installation of the printer driver.

3 Display the [Printers and Faxes] folder.

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes]. For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].

4 Click [Add a printer].

For Windows Server 2003: Double-click [Add Printer].



The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is displayed.

5 Click [Next].



6 Make sure that [Local printer attached to this computer] is selected, then click [Next].



NOTE

Do not place a checkmark for [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer].

7 Make sure that [Use the following port] is selected, select the USB port to which this printer is connected, and then click [Next].



8 Click [Have Disk].

Select the manufacture disk, click Have Disk. I	r and model of your printer. If your printer came with f your printer is not listed, consult your printer docum	an installation entation for
compatible printer softw	iare.	
Manufacturer	Printers	
Agfa	AGFA-AccuSet v52.3	
Apollo	AGFA-AccuSetSF v52.3	
Apple APS-PS	AGFA-AccuSet 800SF v52.3	
This driver is digitally signed	Windows Undate	Have Disk
Toll no why driver elements	important	Have prote

9 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive, and then click [Browse].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



10 Select [D:\English\Win2K_XP]. Select [CNAB1STK.INF], then click [Open].

The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.

Locate File		? 🛛
Look jn:	🔄 Win2K_XP 💽 🕑 😥 🔛 🗸	
My Recent Documents		
Desktop		
My Documents		
My Computer		
	File game: CNAB1STK	<u>O</u> pen
My Network	Files of type: Setup Information (".inf)	Lancel

11 Confirm the contents of [Copy manufacturer's files from], then click [OK].

For example, when your CD-ROM drive is drive [D:], it is displayed as [D:\English\Win2K_XP].



"Canon LBP3600" is displayed in the [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box.

12 Click [Next].

Install Printer Software The manufacturer and model determine v	which printer software to use.
Select the manufacturer and model of disk, dick Have Disk. If your printer is compatible printer software.	your printer. If your printer came with an installation not listed, consult your printer documentation for
Printers	
•	
Y This driver is digitally signed.	Windows Update Have Disk

13 Enter a new name in [Printer name] if you want to change the printer name, then click [Next].

If another printer driver has been already installed in the computer, the message "Do you want your Windows-based programs to use this printer as the default printer?" appears. In this case, select [Yes] or [No].

Name Your Printer	
You must assign a name to this	s printer.
Type a name for this printer. Be name combinations of more the possible.	scause some programs do not support printer and server an 31 characters, it is best to keep the name as short as
Canon LBP3600	as the default minter?
⊙Yes	
O №	

14 Click [Next].

You can share th	s printer with other network users.
If you want to sha suggested name users.	e this printer, you must provide a share name. You can use the type a new one. The share name will be visible to other network
Do not share t	is printer
O Share name:	

Ø NOTE

When sharing this printer on a network, select [Share name], then click [Next]. The window for entering [Location] and [Comment] is displayed. Enter them as necessary, then click [Next].

15 When printing a test page, click [Yes], then click [Next].



16 Click [Finish].



Copying files is started.

When printing a test page, a dialog box will appear after printing. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.

17 If the printer and computer are not connected, connect them with a USB cable, and then turn the power of the printer ON.

The installation of the printer driver is completed.

After Completing Installation

When the installation of the CAPT software is completed, the icon and folder for this printer will be created.

For Windows 98/Me/2000

- The icon for this printer is displayed in the [Printers] folder.
- [Canon Printer Uninstaller] is added to [Programs] under the [Start] menu.

Printers				_ 🗆 ×
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help			193
🖨 Back 👻 🔿 👻 🖹 🔞 Search 🗍	🗄 Folders 🛛 🛞	哈哈×		
Address 🞯 Printers				
	Add Printer	Canon		
Printers		LBP3600		
This folder contains information about printers that are currently installed, and a wized to help you install new printers. To get information about a printer that is currently installed, right-click the printer's icon. To install a new printer, click the Add Printer icon. Select an item to view its description.				
Windows 2000 Support				
object(s)				1
- 0				
Set Program Access and Def-	aults			
Windows Update				

Programs	Accessories
Documents	🕨 🔚 Canon Printer Uninstaller 🔸 💐 Canon LBP3600 Uninstalle
Settings	, 🔁 Startup
Search	Outlook Express
🧼 Help	
Run	
Shut Down	

■ For Windows XP/Server 2003

- The icon for this printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] folder.
- [Canon Printer Uninstaller] is added to [All Programs] under the [Start] menu.



Checking the Operations by Printer Status Print

Before using the printer for the first time, be sure to print the printer status to check the operations using the following procedure. Printer Status Print prints the optional settings of the printer and printer status such as total number of printouts.

NOTE

- Printer Status Print is designed to be printed on A4 size paper. Load A4 size paper.
- The screen shots used in this section are from Windows 2000.

1 Display the [Printers] or [Printers and Faxes] folder.

For Windows 98/Me/2000: From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers]. For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes].



The [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder is displayed.

2 Select the icon for this printer, then select [Printing Preferences] from the [File] menu.

For Windows 98/Me: Select the icon for this printer, then select [Properties] from the [File] menu.

3 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then click [] (Display Printer Status Window) to start up the Printer Status Window.

Canon LBP3600 Printing Prefe Page Setup Finishing Paper So	erences Irce Quality		<u>? ×</u>
Profile: Default Setting	s 💽 🖳 🖅	Output <u>M</u> ethod: SPrint	•
	Page Size: Dutput Size: Copies: Orientation	A4 Match Page Size 1 ⇒ [1 to 393] A Pottrait	▼ ▼ ndscape
A4 [Sceing:Auto] <u>View Settings</u>	Page Layout: Magual Scaling Scaling: Watermark:	1 Page per Sheet 100 % % [25 to 200] CONFIDENTIAL	•
	Custom Paper Size	Edt W Layout Options <u>B</u> esto DK Cancel <u>Apply</u>	re Defaults

NOTE

For details on the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.

4 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Printer Status Print].

Canon LBP3600	
D Options Help	
Preferences	
Utility	Cleaning1
Device Setti	ngs
Refrech	Printer Status Print
	Printing Position Adjustment Print
	×
	3
Current Print Job	My Job Operation
Title	Contents
Document Name User Name Computer Name	9
forms Drinkov State	re Drint



Printer St	atus Print	X
٩	Performs Printer Sta	itus Print.
	OK Cance	4

Printer Status Print is printed.

Cassette2	
	: Exist
Cassette3	: Exist
Cassette4	: Exist
Duplex Unit	: Non
Network board	: Exist
Device Setting	
2-sided Special Mode	: Don't Used
Graphics Special Mode	: Don't Used
Lighten Flicker Mode	: Don't Used
Print Position Adjustment	
Multi-purpose Tray	:0.0 mm
Cassettel	:0.0 mm
Cassette2	:0.0 mm
Cassettes	: 0.0 mm
Cassette4	: 0.0 mm
Warren de la Marine de	: LBP3600
and the second of the second se	: LBP3600
Product Name Controller Version	: KEEK
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version	: KOOK : KOOK
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version Driver Version	: KXXXX : KXXXXX : XXXXX
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version Driver Version USB	: KOOK : KOOK : KOOK
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version Driver Version USB Vendor ID	: KXXX : KXXXX : XXXX : 0x04a9
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version Driver Version USB Vendor ID Product ID Serial Number	: KKKK : KKKK : KKKK : 0x04a9 : 0x2654 : KKKKKKKKKKKK
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version USB Vendor ID Product ID Serial Number Counter	: 0x04a9 : 0x2554
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version Driver Version USB Vendor ID Product ID Serial Number Counter Date And Time	: EXX : EXX : EXX : 0x04a9 : 0x2654 : 27/05/2004 20
Product Name Controller Version Engine Version USB Vendor ID Product ID Serial Number Counter Date And Time Number of Total Printed Pages	: NON : NON : NON : 0x2654 : 27/05/2004 20 : 4335 page
Product Name Controller Version Brgine Version USB Vendor ID Product ID Serial Number Counter Date And Time Number of Total Printed Pages Duplex Print Paper Counter	: KOK : KOK : KOK : KOK : CX04a9 : 0x2654 : 0x2654 : 10x2654 : 4335 page : 475 piece

This is a sample of Status Print. The contents may differ from the Status Print printed by your computer.

NOTE

If Printer Status Print is not printed properly, see "Chapter 7 Troubleshooting".

Printing from a Network Computer by Sharing the Printer on a Network

When you share this printer on a network, you can use it as a network printer, which enables printing from other computers that are not directly connected to this printer.

If this printer is going to be used by multiple computers on a network, specify the settings in the following procedure. Here, the computer directly connected to the printer is called "print server", and the other computers which use the printer through the network are called "clients".





When using the print server environment, perform the following settings:

- 1. Installing the Printer Driver to the Print Server
 - When the printer and print server are connected with the USB cable (See p. 3-4)
 - When the optional network board is installed, and the printer and print server are connected with the LAN cable (See Network Guide)
- Setting the Print Server (Network) (For Windows 98/Me, see p. 3-58; For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, see p. 3-62)
- 3. Setting the Print Server (Printer Sharing) (For Windows 98/Me, see p. 3-61; For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, see p. 3-64)
- 4. Installation on Clients (See p. 3-67)

NOTE

Using this printer on your network requires that both the print server and clients should be using Windows 98/Me or Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003.

Print Server Settings

For Windows 98/Me

NOTE

The screen shots used in this section are from Windows Me.

Network Settings

Double-click [My Computer] → [Control Panel] → the [Network] icon.

The [Network] dialog box is displayed.

2 Display the [Configuration] sheet, then click [Add].

etwork	?
Configuration entification Access Control	
I he following hetwork components are installed:	
Client for Microsoft Networks	
ALI Fast Infrared Controller	
Dial-Up Adapter	_
Intel 8255x-based PCI Ethernet Adapter (10/100)	
MUIS 1394 Net Adapter	
	<u> </u>
Add Remove Propert	ies
Primary Network Logon:	
Client for Microsoft Networks	-
Eile and Print Sharing	
Description	
OK	Cancel

The [Select Network Component Type] dialog box is displayed.

3 Click the [Service] icon, then click [Add].



4 Select [File and printer sharing for Microsoft Networks], then click [OK].



The [Select Network Component Type] dialog box appears first, then the [Network] dialog box reappears.


Network ?X
Configuration Identification Access Control
The following network components are installed:
Elient for Microsoft Networks
State Controller
Dial-Up Adapter
Printer 8230x-based PCI Ethemer Adapter (10/100)
Add Remove Properties
Primary Network Logon:
Lient for Microsoft Networks
File and Print Sharing
Description
OK Cancel

6 Make sure that [I want to be able to allow others to print to my printer(s).] is selected, then click [OK].

File and Print Sharing				? ×
✓ I want to be able to give	others acce	ss to mj	/ <u>f</u> iles.	
I want to be able to allow	others to <u>p</u>	int to m	y printer	[5].
•				
(OK		Can	cel
· · · · ·			/	

7 Display the [Access Control] sheet and select [Share-level access control] or [User-level access control].





From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

The [Printers] folder is displayed.

2 Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Sharing] from the pop-up menu.



3 Select [Shared As]. Change [Share Name] if you want to, then enter [Comment] and [Password] as needed.

Canon LBP3600 Properties	<u>?</u> ×
General Details Sharing Page Setup Finishing Paper Source Quality Configuration	
C Med Shared	
© Shared As	
Share Name: CANON	
Comment	
Password:	
OK Cancel Apply	Help

Ø NOTE

If you have selected [User-level access control] in Step 7 of "Network Settings" (See p. 3-60), click [Add] and select users that can use the printer.

• Do not enter blank or special characters in [Share Name].

4 Click [OK].

The printer icon changes to the printer sharing icon.



For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

NOTE

The screen shots used in this section are from Windows 2000.

Network Settings

From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Network and Dial-up Connections].

For Windows XP: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Network and Internet Connections] \rightarrow [Network Connections]. For Windows Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] \rightarrow [Network Connections] \rightarrow [Local Area Connection], and then proceed to Step 3.

For Windows 2000: The [Network and Dial-up Connections] folder is displayed. For Windows XP: The [Network Connections] folder is displayed.

2 Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.



The [Local Area Connection Properties] dialog box appears.

3 Make sure that [File and Printers Sharing for Microsoft Networks] is selected, then click [OK].



Printer Sharing Settings

NOTE

For Windows XP, the printer cannot be shared on a network at the default settings (the settings immediately after the installation).

Printer sharing settings require running [Network Setup Wizard] to enable the sharing settings.

For more details, see Online Help for Windows.

1 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers] folder is displayed.

2 Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Sharing] from the pop-up menu.



3 Select [Shared as]. Change the share name as needed.

For Windows XP/Server 2003: Select [Share this printer].

eneral Shating Ports Adva	nored Color Management Security Device Settings Pr	trofile]	
Canon LBP3600			
C Not obsred			
• Shared as: CanonLBP			
Drivers for different versions of	Windows		
Windows then you will need to	o install additional drivers for it.		
	Additional Drivers		

NOTE

- You can also specify the sharing settings during the local installation.
- Do not enter blank or special characters in [Shared as].

4 Click [Additional Drivers].

Canon LBP3600 Properties	?
ieneral Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings Profile	
Sanon LBP3600	
C National	
Shared as: CanonLBP	
Drivers for different versions of Windows	
Windows then you will need to install additional drivers for it.	
Additional Drivers	

The [Additional Drivers] dialog box is displayed.

5 Place a checkmark for [Windows 95 or 98], then click [OK].

For Windows XP/Server 2003: Place a checkmark for [Windows 95, 98 and Me], and then click [OK].

Environment	Version	Installed	
🗆 Alpha	Windows NT 3.1	No	
🗆 Alpha	Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51	No	
🗆 Alpha	Windows NT 4.0	No	
✓ Intel	Windows 95 or 98	No	
	Windows NT 3.5 0r 3.51	NO No	
	Windows NT 3 1	No	
	Windows NT 3.5 or 3.51	No	
MIPS	Windows NT 4.0	No	
PowerPC	Windows NT 3.51	No	1
PowerPC	Windows NT 4.0	No	1

6 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the [Insert Disk] dialog box appears, click [OK].

7 Click [Browse]. When your CD-ROM drive is drive [D:], select [D:\English\Win98_Me], and then click [OK].



Copying files is started.

8 Click [Close].

Canon LBP3600	Properties					?
ieneral Sharing	Ports Advanced	Color Manageme	ent Security De	evice Settings Pri	ofile	
🍏 Canon	LBP3600					
C Not shared						
Shared as:	CanonLBP					
D 1 1 111						
Drivers for differ If this printer is	ent versions of Wind shared with users ru	ows nning different versi	ions of			
Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi all additional drivers	ions of for it.			
 Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then 	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi all additional drivers Additi	ions of for it.			
Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi all additional drivers Addit	ions of for it.			
Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi all additional drivers Additi	ions of for it.			
Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi all additional drivers <u>Additi</u>	ions of for it.			
 Drivers for differ If this printer is Windows then 	ent versions of Winc shared with users ru you will need to inst	ows nning different versi al additional drivers (Agditi	ions of for it.			

The printer icon changes to the printer sharing icon.



Installation on the Clients

This section describes the procedure for installing the printer driver on the client computers.

There are two ways to install the printer driver: local installation and download installation.

■ Local Installation (See p. 3-68)

Installing the printer driver using the supplied CD-ROM.

Download and Installation

Installing the printer driver without using the supplied CD-ROM, but by downloading the printer driver from the print server. There are the following two ways of download installation:

- Installing from [Add Printer Wizard] (See p. 3-73)
- Installing from [Windows Explorer] (See p. 3-75)

IMPORTANT

If you are using Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, be sure to log on as a user who is a member of Administrators when starting up.



- Clients can use both Windows 98/Me and Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003.
- If your print server is Windows 98/Me, you cannot download and install on Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003.
- The screen shots used in this section are from Windows 2000.

Installing from CD-ROM Setup

1 Insert the supplied "LBP3600 User Software" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD-ROM is already set in the drive, take it out and insert it into the drive again.

CD-ROM Setup appears automatically.

IMPORTANT

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear automatically, select [Run] from the [Start] menu, enter "D:\English\CNAB1MNU.exe", and then click [OK]. (The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer being used.)

2 Click [Install].

🏷 Canon LBP3600 CD-ROM Setup	
Canon	CAPT CD-ROM Setup
CD-ROM Setup Help	Manuals
Install	
README File	
Always Display when CD is Inserted	
	Exit

The dialog box for confirming the language is displayed.

3 Confirm the language and click [Yes].

he printe	er driver for the following language will be installed
o you w	ant to continue?
	Language: English
	Yes No

After the preparation for installation is completed, the CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology) software installer starts up, and the [Setup Wizard] dialog box appears.

4 Click [Next].



The [License Agreement] dialog box is displayed.

5 Confirm the contents and select [I accept the terms in the license agreement], and then click [Next].



6 Select [Manually Set Port to Install], then click [Next].



7 Click [Next].



Ø NOTE

Do not place a checkmark for [Install Printer Driver through a USB Connection].

8 Select [Use Network Printer] for [Port Settings], then click [Settings].

Set the port used for the selec	ted printer.
Click Next to proceed.	SLET.
Selected Printer :	Canon LBP3600
Jse Driver :	Canon CAPT Driver Ver 1.00
	C Lise Network Printer
Port Set :	Not Set
Yort Set : Yrinter Name :	Not Set
Port Set : Printer Name : Use as <u>S</u> hared Printer	Not Set Canon LBP3600 Details
Port Set : Printer Name : Use as Shared Printer Set as Default	Not Set Canon LBP3500 Details

9 Select the directory of the print server, then click [OK].



10 Select whether or not to use this printer as the default printer, then click [Next].



11 Click [Start].



12 The message "Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?" is displayed. Click [Yes].

Warning	×
⚠	Installation cannot be stopped once it starts. Do you want to continue?
	<u><u>Y</u>es <u>No</u></u>

The installation of the printer driver starts.

13 The window that informs you the completion of the installation is displayed. Select [Restart my computer now], then click [Exit].

Windows restarts.

Installing from [Add Printer Wizard]

From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Printers] to open the [Printers] folder. Then, double-click the [Add Printer] icon.

For Windows XP Professional: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes] \rightarrow [Add a printer].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes] \rightarrow [Add a printer].

For Windows Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes], and then double-click [Add a printer].

The [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box is displayed.

2 Click [Next].



3 Select [Network printer] and click [Next].



Click [Next]. 4

For Windows 98/Me, click [Browse].

Loca	Ate Your Printer How do you want to locate your printer?	Ś
li	you don't know the name of the printer, you can browse for one on	the network.
V	Vhat do you want to do?	
(Type the printer name, or click Next to browse for a printer Name: 	
¢	© Connect to a printer on the Internet or on your intranet	

5 Select the directory of the print server, then click [Next].

Printer	Wizard	
Browse Loci	For Printer ate your network printer	E
Printer:	\\SREVER2003STD\Cano	n LBP3600
Shared	printers:	
	SERVER	Canon LBP3600
- Printe	r information	
Com	ment	
	e: Beadu	Documents Waiting 0
State	as. Theady	Documents watering.

For Windows 98/Me: Proceed to Step 7.

6 Select whether or not to use this printer as the default printer, then click [Next].



7 Click [Finish].



Ø NOTE

If the [Digital Signature Not Found] dialog box appears, click [Yes].

Installing from [Windows Explorer]

From the [Start] menu, select [Programs] → [Accessories] →[Windows Explorer].

For Windows XP/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Windows Explorer]. For Windows 98: From the [Start] menu, select [Programs] → [Windows Explorer].

2 Select the print server from [My Network Places] (from [Network Computer] for Windows 98), then double-click the icon for this printer.

Or drag and drop the icon for this printer into the [Printers] folder.



3 The [Printers] dialog box is displayed. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Uninstalling the CAPT Software

Uninstalling removes software from your computer and restores the computer to the state before installing the software. The CAPT software can be uninstalled using the following procedure.

MPORTANT

If the printer driver was installed into Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 logged on by a user who is a member of Administrators, it cannot be uninstalled from the computer logged on by anyone other than users who are members of Administrators. Be sure to log in as a user who is a member of Administrators before the uninstallation.

1 Make sure to close all the files and programs listed below:

- Help files
- Printer Status Window
- Control Panel
- Other applications

2 From the [Start] menu, select [Programs] → [Canon Printer Uninstaller] → [Canon LBP3600 Uninstaller].

For Windows XP/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] \rightarrow [Canon Printer Uninstaller] \rightarrow [Canon LBP3600 Uninstaller].

The [Delete Printer] dialog box is displayed.

3 Select the name for this printer.

4 Click [Delete].



A confirmation message is displayed.

NOTE

Even if [Canon LBP3600] is not on the list in the [Delete Printer] dialog box, you can delete the file and information related to this printer by clicking the [Delete] button.

5 Click [Yes].



Uninstallation starts. Please wait until it is completed.

6 Click [Exit].



The [Delete Printer] dialog box closes.

NOTE

If the CAPT software cannot be uninstalled, see "When Uninstallation Fails," on p. 7-51.

Printing a Document



This chapter describes the printing procedures and the functions of this printer.

Printing from the Application Software	
Job Operations	
Specifying the Printing Preferences	
Setting Printer Information Before Printing	
Using the Printing Functions. Various Pages in the Printer Driver. Preview. Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet. Scaling Print Output. Poster Printing . Watermark Printing . Specifying a Custom Paper Size. Printing Borders and Printing Date. Selecting an Objective . Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations . Cuttors	
Specifying the Finishing Method Specifying the Paper Feed Method Specifying the Print Quality Grayscale Settings . Specifying Profiles PageComposer . Viewing the Printer Settings/Restoring the Default Settings.	
Printer Status Window Functions on the Printer Status Window Displaying the Printer Status Window Setting Preferences [Utility] Menu [Device Settings] Menu	
[Refresh]	

4. Printing a Document

[Resolve Error]	. 4-85
Displaying Status When a Print Server is Used	. 4-85

Printing from the Application Software

After installing the CAPT software, you can now print jobs on the printer.

This section describes the procedure for printing from an application, taking Adobe Reader 6.0 as an example.

- Load paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette. (See "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 2-57, "Printing from a Paper Cassette," on p. 2-17)
- **2** Open the PDF file to print with Adobe Reader, and then select [Print Setup] from the [File] menu.



3 Specify the paper size of the document and the printing orientation, then click [OK].



4

Select [Print] from the [File] menu.



The printer driver starts up, and the [Print] dialog box appears.



Ø NOTE

The printer name displayed in this dialog box can be changed in the [Printers] folder (the [Printers and Faxes] folder for Windows XP/Server 2003).

6 If you want to specify more detailed printing preferences, click [Properties].



The [Canon LBP3600 Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Ø NOTE

The procedure for displaying the [Printer Properties] dialog box may differ depending on the application being used.

7 Specify the printing preferences in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] sheets, and then click [OK].

Profile: Default Sett	ings 💽 🚰 💇	Output Method: \Xi Edit and Preview 💌
	Page Size:	A4 2 Match Page Size 2 1 m² [1 to 339] A) Portrait
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Sheet
∿4 [Scaling:Auto] 		CONFIDENTIAL Edit.Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Lavout Options Restore Defaults

The [Print] dialog box reappears.

NOTE

It is recommended that you confirm the contents of the [Page Setup] sheet and the [Paper Source] sheet each time you print.

8 Click [OK].

The printer starts printing.

Ø NOTE

- If you have any problems with printing, see "Chapter 7 Troubleshooting".
- "Using the Printing Functions" (See p. 4-22) describes how to use the various functions of the printer and printer driver. By specifying the settings for the printer and printer driver for each job, you can make the best use of the printer and its functions.

Job Operations

You can delete, pause, or resume a job in the Printer Status Window.

1 Start printing.

The Printer Status Window appears.

NOTE

The Printer Status Window may not appear depending on the settings for [Display Printer Status Window] in the [Preferences] menu in the Printer Status Window. (See "Setting Preferences," on p. 4-82)

2 When deleting or pausing the job, click the [Pause Job] button in the [Current Print Job] tab or [My Job Operation] tab.

J Printing		[
alle and a	100 Million Control of	
Current Print Job My	Job Operation	<u>_</u>
Current Print Job My	Job Operation	
Current Print Job My	Job Operation	
Current Print Job My Title Document Name User Name	Job Operation 1 012 Payes Printed. Contents Manual_2 pdf Johnson 2/k FNG	

The following message is displayed and the [My Job Operation] tab is selected on the top by clicking the [Pause Job] button in the [Current Print Job] tab.

Printer Information		
Moving the job to the (My Job Operal Cancel or resume printing the job.	ion] tab.	

3 Click the button for the desired operation from among the [Job Operation] buttons.



• Deleting the job

□ Click [I] (Delete Job).

• Pausing the job

□ Click [**___**] (Pause Job).

• Resuming the job

□ Click [▶] (Resume Job).

Specifying the Printing Preferences

The CAPT software for LBP3600 allows you to specify various printing preferences.

To specify the printing preferences, first display the [Printer Properties] dialog box or the [Document Properties] dialog box. Perform any one of the following procedures that is suitable for your operating system to display the Properties dialog boxes.

For Windows 98/Me

If you display the [Document Properties] dialog box from your application, you can specify the settings only for the job.

If you display the [Printer Properties] dialog box from the [Printers] folder, the print options and default values for all jobs can be specified.



The [Configuration] sheet that allows you to specify the optional settings can be displayed only by using the procedure described in "Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder" (See p. 4-12).

Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the Application

This section describes the procedure, taking Adobe Reader 6.0 as an example.

1 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

Z) I	ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻iew <u>D</u> ocument <u>T</u> ools	: <u>₩</u> indow <u>H</u> elj	·
	Create Adobe PD <u>F</u> Online		at Tex
	<u>³ О</u> реп	Ctrl+O	
0	🛅 <u>М</u> у Bookshelf		×
marl	<u>E</u> mail		-
look	Close	Ctrl+W	
-	Save <u>a</u> Copy	Shift+Ctrl+S	
res	Sa <u>v</u> e as Text		
gnatu	Document Properties	Ctrl+D	
0	D	0.200.0	
	Erint	Ctrl+P	
Le.			と
-	1 C:\WINDOWS\Desktop\Manu	al_2.pdf	
ages	2 C:\WINDOWS\Desktop\Manu	al_3.pdf	
	E <u>x</u> it	Ctrl+Q	
	🗄 <u>[]</u> Chapter7 Troubleshootir	ng	
	🗉 📭 Chapter8 Appendix		

The [Print] dialog box is displayed.

NOTE

Printing procedures differ depending on your application. For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with your application.

2 Select this printer for [Name] or [Printer Name] and click [Properties].



The [Document Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Canon LBP3600 Properties		?×
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality	
Profile: Default Settings	• 🗐 💇	Output Method: SPrint
	Page Size:	A4
	Dutput Size:	Match Page Size
<u>-6</u>	<u>C</u> opies:	1 1 to 999]
	Orientation	A © Portrait A © Landscape
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Sheet
	Manual Scaling	100 🚎 % (25 to 200)
View Settings	□ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
		Edjt Watermark
	Cystom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>B</u> estore Defaults
		OK Cancel Apply Help

Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder

1 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

	*	Windows Update			
ion		Programs	×		
Edit	<u></u>	Documents	•		
ium	.	<u>S</u> ettings	•	•	Control Panel
lenn		Sear <u>c</u> h	(Printers
M	2	<u>H</u> elp	1		
vs Me	<u>7</u>	<u>B</u> un			
P	&	Log Off Johnson			
Ž	9	Shut Down			
	Start			-	

The [Printers] folder is displayed.

2 Select the icon for this printer, then select [Properties] from the [File] menu.



The [Printer Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Canon LBP3600 F	Properties	? >
General Details	Sharing Page Setup Finishing Paper Source Quality Configuration	
Canon I	BP3600	
Comment		
<u>D</u> onandra		
Separator page:	[nnne] T Browse	
<u>o</u> oparator paga.		
	Print <u>I</u> est Page	
	DK Cancel Apply	Heb

Printing a Document

Ø NOTE

The [Printer Properties] dialog box can also be displayed by right-clicking the icon for this printer and selecting [Properties] from the pop-up menu.

For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

If you display the [Document Properties] dialog box from your application, you can specify the settings only for the job.

If you display the [Document Properties] dialog box from the [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder, you can specify the default settings for all jobs.

If you display the [Printer Properties] dialog box from the [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder, you can specify the printer options and add the frequently used options as "Profiles".

Ø NOTE

- Full Control Permission is required to specify the settings for the [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder. If you cannot display the [Document Properties] dialog box from the [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder, display the dialog box from the application.
- The [Device Settings] sheet that allows you to specify the optional settings can be displayed only by using the procedure described in "Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder" (See p. 4-17).

Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the Application

This section describes the procedure, taking Adobe Reader 6.0 as an example.

1 Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

AF	ile Edit View Document	Tools Window Help
	Create Adobe PDE Online	e
76	<u> O</u> pen	Ctrl+O
9 E	my Bookshelf	
mar	Email	
aok	⊆lose	Ctrl+W
-	Save <u>a</u> Copy	Shift+Ctrl+S
res	Sa <u>v</u> e as Text	
gnatu	Document Properties	Ctrl+D
03		chiki i chili i p
2	Print	Ctrl+P
ie_	mane geories mongra	mercurri
-	1 D:\\Manual_2.pdf	
ages	2 D:\\Users(E).pdf	
<u>۵</u>	3 D:\\Manual_3.pdf	
	4 I:\Manual_3.pdf	
		224 - 22

2 Confirm the printer name, then click [Properties].



The [Document Properties] dialog box is displayed.

		On an a Marth and The Ends and Preview
Figlie: 1 B) Default Cetting		
]9	Page Size:	A4
	📥 Output Size:	Match Page Size
	Copies:	1 🚔 [1 to 999]
	Orientațion	
		A C Landscape
	Page Laugut	1 Page per Sheet
	Manual Scaling	100.11
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	Scaling:	100 🚍 % [25 to 200]
⊻iew Settings	□ □ □ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
4	Ð	Edit Watermark
		0

Displaying the [Document Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder

1 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes].



The [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder is displayed.

2 Select the icon for this printer, then select [Printing Preferences] from the [File] menu.



The [Document Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Profile: Default Sett	ings 💽 🚰 💇	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Page Size:	A4 Match Page Size 미국 [1 to 999]	
	Page Layout:	A C Portrait A C Landsc.	эре
A4 (Scaling:Auto) View Settings	Scaling	100 ## % [25 to 200]	
	Custom Paner Size	Edit Water	nark

Ø NOTE

The [Document Properties] dialog box can also be displayed by right-clicking the icon for this printer and selecting [Printing Preferences] from the pop-up menu.

Displaying the [Printer Properties] Dialog Box from the [Printers] Folder

1 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes].



The [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder is displayed.

2 Select the icon for this printer, then select [Properties] from the [File] menu.


The [Printer Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Location:						
Comment:				_		
Model:	I Canon LBP3600					
- Features -						
Color: No		Paper available	×			
Double-si	ded: No	A4		<u>×</u>		
Staple: N	0					
Speed: 22	2 ppm					
Maximum	resolution: 600 dpi					

Ø NOTE

The [Printer Properties] dialog box can also be displayed by right-clicking the icon for this printer and selecting [Properties] from the pop-up menu.

Setting Printer Information Before Printing

Before printing a job, specify the settings for the paper source options and duplex unit. Perform the following steps each time you install the optional accessories:

1 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] \rightarrow [Printers].

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [Printers and Faxes].



The [Printers] folder or the [Printers and Faxes] folder is displayed.

2 Select the icon for this printer, then select [Properties] from the [File] menu.



The [Printer Properties] dialog box is displayed.

Ø NOTE

The [Printer Properties] dialog box can also be displayed by right-clicking the icon for this printer and selecting [Properties] from the pop-up menu.

3 Display the [Device Settings] (for Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003) or [Configuration] (for Windows 98/Me) sheet, then specify the settings in [Paper Source Options] and [Duplex Unit].





You can also obtain the printer status such as paper source options automatically by clicking [Get Device Status].



Various Pages in the Printer Driver

The [Printer Properties] dialog box and the [Document Properties] dialog box contain the following sheets that allow you to specify the various printing functions. You can switch among the sheets by clicking the tabs across the top of the dialog box.

This section describes the types of printing preferences that can be specified in each sheet.

■ For Windows 98/Me

- [Document Properties] Dialog Box
 - [Page Setup] Sheet
 - [Finishing] Sheet
 - [Paper Source] Sheet
 - [Quality] Sheet
- [Printer Properties] Dialog Box
 - [General] Sheet
 - [Details] Sheet
 - [Sharing] Sheet
 - [Page Setup] Sheet
 - [Finishing] Sheet
 - [Paper Source] Sheet
 - [Quality] Sheet
 - [Configuration] Sheet

■ For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

- [Document Properties] Dialog Box
 - [Page Setup] Sheet
 - [Finishing] Sheet
 - [Paper Source] Sheet
 - [Quality] Sheet

- [Printer Properties] Dialog Box
 - [General] Sheet
 - [Sharing] Sheet
 - [Ports] Sheet
 - [Advanced] Sheet
 - [Security] Sheet
 - [Device Settings] Sheet
 - [Profile] Sheet

NOTE

For more details on operations, see Online Help.

Online Help can be displayed using the following procedure. To close the displayed Online Help, click within the Online Help window.

- Press the [Tab] key on your keyboard to select the item of which you want to display Help, then press the [F1] key.
- Right-click the item of which you want to display Help, then click [What's This?] from the pop-up menu.
- Click [?] (Help) on [Titlebar], move the [?]-attached cursor to the item of which you want to display Help, then click it.

[Page Setup] Sheet

The [Page Setup] sheet allows you to specify the following printing preferences:

Canon LBP3600 Properties	s] Quality]		<u>? ×</u>
Profile: Default Settings	• 🖫 🜌	Output <u>M</u> ethod:	Print
	Page Size: Output Size: Copies: Orientation	A4 Match Page Size 1 * [1 to 999] A © Portrait	▼ ▼ ▲ C Landscape
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Shee	et 💌
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	☐ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL	Edjt Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Layout Options	<u>R</u> estore Defaults
		ОК	Cancel Help

Page Size

Display the [Page Size] pull-down menu, then select the desired page size by clicking it.

The page sizes that can be selected are as follows:

• Standard paper sizes (Sizes from A0 to A5; from 11 x 17 to Executive)

- Envelopes (Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope C5, Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5)
- Custom Paper Size (See p. 4-52)

NOTE

When the paper size specified in [Page Size] is larger than the size that can be loaded in the printer and [Match Page Size] is selected for [Output Size], A0, A1, and A2 sizes are printed on A3 size paper, and B1, B2, and B3 sizes are printed on B4 size paper, respectively reduced.

Output Size

Display the [Output Size] pull-down menu, then select the desired paper size.

The paper sizes that can be selected are as follows:

- Match Page Size
- Standard paper sizes (Sizes from A3 to A5; from 11 x 17 to Executive)
- Envelopes (Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope C5, Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5)
- Custom Paper Size (See p. 4-52)

NOTE

- When printing on paper that is of the same size as [Page Size], select [Match Page Size].
- If you select a paper size that differs from [Page Size], the print will be automatically reduced or enlarged to fit on the page.
- When printing data in which multiple paper sizes are specified in the application, you can print at the same size as you specified in [Output Size] in the printer driver.
- If you can specify the page size, print copies, and orientation in your application, you do not have to specify the settings in the [Page Setup] sheet.

■ Copies

Allows you to specify the number of copies to be printed.

Click the arrows for [Copies] or enter a number from the keypad. You can specify from 1 to 999 print copies.

Orientation

Allows you to select either portrait orientation or landscape orientation.

Click either [Portrait] or [Landscape] for [Orientation].

■ Page Layout (See p. 4-41)

• N Pages per Sheet

Multiple pages can be printed on one sheet of paper.

The number of pages that can be selected is 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, or 16 (Pages per Sheet). If you select 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, or 16 (Pages per Sheet), the [Page Order] pull-down menu appears, allowing you to specify the page order.

Poster

Magnifies a single page image and prints it out on several sheets of paper. The number of pages that can be selected is 2×2 , 3×3 , or 4×4 .

■ Manual Scaling/Page Order (See p. 4-43)

When [1 Page per Sheet] is selected for [Page Layout], [Manual Scaling] appears. When 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, or 16 (Pages per Sheet) is selected for [Page Layout], [Page Order] appears.

- Manual Scaling: The scaling is adjusted automatically when the values in [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different. If you want to specify the scale factor manually, select [Manual Scaling], then specify the value in the spin box. You can specify from 25 to 200 %.
- Page Order: You can select the page order when printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper.

■ Custom Paper Size (See p. 4-52)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Custom Paper Size]. This dialog box allows you to specify the height and width of custom paper size, which is different from the standard paper sizes.

In Windows 98/Me, up to 30 custom paper sizes can be added. In Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003, the number depends on the system environment.

Name	Size		New Name
Letter 11x17 Legal Executive A5 B5 A4 A3	$\begin{array}{c} 215.9 \times 279.4 \\ 279.4 \times 431.8 \\ 215.9 \times 355.6 \\ 184.2 \times 266.7 \\ 148.5 \times 210.0 \\ 182.0 \times 257.0 \\ 210.0 \times 257.0 \\ 257.0 \times 297.0 \\ 257.0 \times 364.0 \\ 297.0 \times 420.0 \end{array}$		Unit C Millimeter C Inch Paper Size Wolth: 2100 mm [76.2 to 297.0] Height: 297.0 mm [127.0 to 431.8]
Dielete		214	

■ Watermark (See p. 4-47)

Allows you to specify whether to superimpose a watermark on the print data.

■ Edit Watermark (See p. 4-49)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Edit Watermark].

This dialog box allows you to add new watermarks and edit the added watermarks.

dit Watermark		?
	Watermark *COPY *DRAFT *FILE COF *FINAL *PRELIMI	List. INTIAL · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	<u>N</u> ame:	
Position	Iext Eont	CONFIDENTIAL
X: 0 [F50 to 50] Y: 0 [F50 to 50] Move to Center	Size:	Regular 72
Angle Upward Left to Right Downward Left to Right Set Angle	Eolor Border	Medium Gray Medi
	Print on) First Page Only

■ Layout Options (See p. 4-54)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Layout Options]. This dialog box allows you to specify borders, date, and page numbers to be printed on the printouts.

Edging: None Print Date: Off Print User Name: Off Print Page Number: Off	?
Pint Qate: Of Pint User Name: Off Pint Hage Humber: Off	
Print Date: Off Print User Name: Off Print Page Number: Off	
Off Print User Name: Off Print Vare Name: Off Print Page Number: Off Off	
Print User Name: Off Print Page Number: Off	
Off Print Page Number: Off	
Print Page <u>N</u> umber: Off	
Off	
	1
OK Cancel <u>R</u> estore Defaults <u>H</u>	lelp

[Finishing] Sheet

The [Finishing] sheet allows you to specify the following printing preferences:

Canon LBP3600 Properties Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality			<u>?×</u>
Profile: Default Settings	• 🖳 🗹	Output <u>M</u> ethod:	Print	•
A4 [scaling-Auto] View Settings	Print Style	-sided Printing -sided Printing booklet Printing per Sizes/Orientations eft] -eft] Diff Collate		Booglet
		Finishing Details	<u>B</u> estore	Defaults
		OK	Cancel	Help

■ Print Style (See p. 4-55)

Allows you to select the print style (1-sided Printing, 2-sided Printing, or Booklet Printing). The optional duplex unit is required for 2-sided printing and booklet printing.

Booklet (See p. 4-56)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by selecting [Booklet Printing] for [Print Style] and clicking [Booklet].

This dialog box allows you to specify the settings for booklet printing.

ed Settings for Booklet	
Booklet Printing Method	
A.C.	All Pages at Once
	O Divide into Sets
~	15 Sheets per Set [1 to 15]
Specify Booklet Gutter:	5 🚎 mm [0 to 30]
	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp

■ Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations (See p. 4-57)

When printing a document of mixed paper sizes or orientations, place a checkmark for [Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations] and specify the paper alignment or gutter settings in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.

■ Details (See p. 4-58)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by placing a checkmark for [Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations] and clicking [Details].

This dialog box allows you to specify the paper alignment on output when printing a document of mixed paper sizes or orientations.

ailed Settings		?
int with Mixed Paper S	izes/Orientations	
Paper Alignment		
• Pattern 1		
C Pattern 2	ð •====]
+ <u>G</u> utter:	0	
Image Processing		
C Stagger Image wi	h Size as-is	
	OK Cancel	Help

■ Binding Location (See p. 4-59)

You can specify which edge of the printout is bound.

■ Gutter (See p. 4-59)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Gutter].

This dialog box allows you to specify the width of the gutter and image processing method.

Sutter	Settings			? ×
• •	<u>G</u> utter:		mm [0 to 30]	
_ <u>l</u> ma	i ge Process	ing .	_	
•	Reduce a	nd Arrange		
C	Stagger In	hage with Siz	e as-is	

Finishing

You can select the procedure for output from the following items:

- Off: Printouts of a complete job are grouped.
- Collate: Printouts of a complete job are collated.

■ Finishing Details (See p. 4-60)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Finishing Details].

This dialog box allows you to specify the various options for job processing.

Detect Paper Size in Tray		
Rotate Print Data 180 Degrees		
🔽 Use Skip Blank Pages Mode		
	Advanced	Settings

■ Advanced Settings (See p. 4-61)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Finishing Details] dialog box.

This dialog box allows you to specify the finishing details.

Image Refinement:	On		
Fixing Mode:	Off		<u> </u>
EMF Spooling			
Print Last Page in 1-sic	led Mode when 2-s	ided Printing is Set	
Print on the Back of Pr	inted Paper from th	e Multi-purpose Tray	

[Paper Source] Sheet

You can specify the following printing preferences in the [Paper Source] sheet.

爹 Canon LBP3600 Properties			<u>? ×</u>
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality		
Profile: Default Settings	• 🖫 🗹	Output Method: SPrint	•
	Paper <u>S</u> election:	er for All Pages	•
	Pap <u>e</u> r Source:	Auto Multi-purpose Tray Cassette 1 Cassette 2 Cassette 3 Cassette 4	
	Paper Type:	Plain Paper	_
A4 [Scaling:Auto] View Settings	Continue Printing	nting from the Multi-purpose Tray with the Multi-purpose Tray	
		Bestor	e Defaults
		OK Cancel	Help

■ Paper Selection (See p. 4-63)

You can select the paper sources for feeding paper from the following items:

- Same Paper for All Pages
 Feeds paper from the same paper source for the entire job.
- Different for First, Others, and Last Feeds paper from different paper sources for the first page, body pages and last page.
- Different for First, Second, Others, and Last Feeds paper from different paper sources for the first page, second page, body pages, and last page.
- Different for Cover and Others

Feeds paper from different paper sources for the cover page and body pages when printing a booklet. This item can be used only when [Booklet Printing] is selected for [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet.

• Transparency Interleaving Enables paper sheets to be placed between the transparency sheets the document is printed on. This item can be used only when either [A4] or [Letter] is selected for [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet.

■ Paper Source (See p. 4-63)

Specify paper source or paper type according to the settings selected in [Paper Selection].

Paper Type

Specify the type of paper to be used. Specify as follows:

Printer Driver Setting	Paper Type
[Plain Paper]	Plain paper (64 - 80 g/m ²)
[Plain Paper L]	Select when paper is curled by selecting [Plain Paper].
[Heavy Paper]	Heavy paper (106 - 128 g/m ²), Labels
[Heavy Paper L]	Heavy paper (81 - 105 g/m ²)
[Transparencies]	Transparencies

* When printing envelopes, the printer automatically applies the appropriate print mode to the envelope type by specifying [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet.

🕛 IMPORTANT

When printing heavy paper (81 - 90 g/m²) from a cassette or performing 2-sided printing on that, perform the following settings:

- ① Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type] in the [Paper Source] sheet.
- ② Click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box, and then, select [Mode 4] for [Fixing Mode] in the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

■ Pause when Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray

Specify whether the printer should pause a job and display a message or continue the job when feeding paper from the multi-purpose tray. When this option is checked, a message is displayed and the printer pauses the job. Make sure that the paper size specified in the printer driver is the same as the size of paper in the multi-purpose tray and click the [Resolve Error] button in the Printer Status Window.

■ Continue Printing with the Multi-purpose Tray

Specify whether the printer should switch the paper source to the multi-purpose tray automatically when a cassette has run out of paper during a job and the paper specified in [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet is not loaded in any other cassette.

[Quality] Sheet

The [Quality] sheet allows you to specify the following printing preferences:

Descup Finishing Paper Source	e Quality	Outrustietheat 🏾	Print
Profile: Default Settings		Output <u>M</u> ethod:	Print
	Objective:		
Transition of A second line of the Design of	Graphics		
	Designs [CAD]		
	Web Fages		
			Details
	This setting is used whe	en printing documents in ger	neral
	The octang is dood with	ar printing declariter to in ger	icita.
⊻iew Settings	Manual Grauscale 9	Settings	
	Print Grayscale S	ample	and a second
<i></i>			
<u></u>		About	Restore Defaults

■ Objective (See p. 4-65)

Selecting the appropriate objective for the contents of the job allows you to perform optimum printing.

- General: Prints in the appropriate mode for printing documents or charts in a general format.
- Graphics: Prints in the appropriate mode for printing graphics.
- Photos: Prints in the appropriate mode for printing documents that contain photographs, graphics, and others. You can produce printed colors that are close to those on the screen.
- Designs [CAD]: Prints in the appropriate mode for printing colored thin lines. Since photographs and graphics are printed darker, the thin lines appear clearer.
- Web Pages: Prints in the appropriate mode for printing illustrations on web sites. Prints low-resolution image data that is printed rough or jagged with normal printing more smoothly.

■ Details (See p. 4-65)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Details].

This dialog box allows you to change the printing preferences.

Detailed Settings			<u>?</u> ×
B & W Halftones:	En Pattern 1		
✓ Print Colored Text and I	ines in Black		
🔲 Enable Image Correctio	n		
Toger Density:		_ <u></u>	
	Light		Dark
🔲 U <u>s</u> e Toner Save			
	OK	Cancel	Help

IMPORTANT

Using the Toner Save mode may decrease print density, making printed text look patchy.

■ Manual Grayscale Settings (See p. 4-67)

Place a checkmark when customizing the grayscale. To specify the grayscale in detail, click the [Grayscale Settings] button to display the [Grayscale Settings] dialog box.

■ Grayscale Settings (See p. 4-67)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Grayscale Settings].

This dialog box has the [Grayscale Adjustment] sheet and the [Matching] sheet.

• [Grayscale Adjustment] Sheet

This sheet allows you to specify brightness and contrast for printing.

Grayscale Settings							<u>? ×</u>
Grayscale Adjustment Mato	hing						
Preview				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	٦		
WHITE -	Brightness:	0	Dark	*	×	Light	
	Contrast	0	Low	•	•	High	
ABCDEF							
Original							
ABCDEF							
						<u>R</u> estore Defaul	is l
				OK	Ca	ncel	Help

• [Matching] Sheet

This sheet allows you to specify the procedure for color correction for printing. When performing color adjustment in the printer driver, the settings specified in [Matching Method] and [Monitor Profile] will be enabled. When not performing, specify the settings for the gamma correction that performs brightness of colors.

irayscale Settings			<u>?</u> ×
Grayscale Adjustment Matching			
Matching Mode:	Driver Matching Mode Gamma Adjustment		
Matching Method:	Auto		¥.
Monitor Profile:	Canon HDTV gamma 1.5 Mon	itor	*
<u>G</u> amma:	1.4		•
		<u>R</u> estor	
			e Defaults

■ Print Grayscale Sample (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

You can print an adjusted grayscale sample after specifying the settings in the [Grayscale Adjustment] sheet that is displayed when [Grayscale Settings] is clicked. The after-adjustment image is printed in the center of the paper, and the images whose [Brightness] and [Contrast] are changed by graduation are each printed around the after-adjustment image.

[General] Sheet

This sheet displays the printer name. Allows you to print a test page.

Canon LBP3600			
Location:			
Comment:			
Model: Canon LBP3600			
Features Color: No	Paper available:		
Double-sided: No	A4	<u> </u>	
Staple: No Speed: 22 ppm			
Maximum resolution: 600 dp	,	-	
Prin	ting Preferences	Print Test Page	
<u> </u>		- min _ court age	

[Details] Sheet (Windows 98/Me only)

This sheet allows you to specify the settings for the printer port, spooling, and others and add drivers.

Canon LBP3600 Properties	? ×
General Details Sharing Page Setup Finishing Paper Source Quality Configuration	
Canon LBP3600	
Print to the following gort:	
non CAPT USB Device:00000142M9DM	
Disturing the following driver	
Canon LBP3600 View Driver	
Capture Printer Port End Capture	
Timeout settings	
Not selected: 15 seconds	
Transmission jetty: 180 seconds	
Spool Settings Port Settings	
OK Cancel Apply He	slp

Printing a Document



• For Windows 98/Me, the [Sharing] sheet does not appear if [File and printer sharing for

• For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, the [Sharing] sheet does not appear if the appropriate network settings have not been performed. (See p. 3-62)

This sheet allows you to specify whether or not to share the printer.

[Sharing] Sheet

NOTE

Ø

Canon LBP:	3600 Prop	erties						?
ieneral Sha	aring Ports	Advanced	Color Manag	ement Sec	curity Devi	ce Settings F	rofile	
• Not shar	ed							
C Shared a	15:							
Drivers for	different ve	sions of Window	vs	. ,				
If this prin Windows	iter is shared then you w	l with users runn Il need to install	ing different v additional driv	versions of vers for it.				
lf this prin Windows	iter is shared then you w	I with users runn II need to install	ing different s additional driv	versions of vers for it. dditional Driv	vers			
If this prin Windows	iter is shared then you w	I with users runn II need to install	ing different s additional driv	versions of vers for it. glditional Driv	vers			
If this prin Windows	iter is shared then you w	I with users runn II need to install	ing different s additional driv	versions of vers for it.	vers			
If this prin Windows	iter is shared then you w	with users runn	ing different s additional driv	ersions of vers for it.	vers			

[Ports] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

This sheet allows you to add, delete, and configure the printer port.

eneral SH	haring Ports Ad	Ivanced Color Manager	ment Security D	evice Settings	Profile	
(it)						
	Canon LBP3600					
	(1) () () ()	a Michaela	e			
rint to the checked p	following port(s). Do ort.	ocuments will print to the	hrst free			
Port	Description	Printer		1		
Сом1	: Serial Port					
СОМ2 П СОМ2	: Serial Port			1		
	Serial Port					
FILE:	Print to File					
	Virtual printer po Local Port	rt fo Canon LBP3600)			
	1	1				
Add	Port	Delete Port	Configure Port			
Enable	bidirectional suppor					
Enable	printer pooling					

[Advanced] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

This sheet allows you to specify the detailed settings, such as available time of the printer and the spooling settings.

eral Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings Profile Atways available Availagle from 12:00 AM 2: To Spool print documents to program finishes printing faster Cr Start printing mediately Print glicetly to the printer Hold mismatched documents inst	meral Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings Profile Available from 12:00 AM To 12:00 AM To Normality 1 To 12:00 AM To Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster Image State printing after last page is spooled Stat printing immediately Print gnooled documents Print gnooled documents Each advanced printing features Printing Docements Printing Docements Printing Docements	Canon LBP3600 Properties	?
Available from 12:00 AM	Available from 12:00 AM 12:00 AM 12:00 AM White: Image: Too 12:00 AM 12:00 AM White: Canon LBP3600 Image: New Driver Spool prink documents so program finishes prinking faster New Driver Spool prink documents so program finishes prinking faster Stat prinking after last page is spooled Stat prinking immediately Print girectly to the prinker Hold mismatched documents Empoded documents Print prodeed documents Empoded documents Enable advonced prinking features Separator Page	eneral Sharing Ports Advanced Color Management Security Device Settings Profile	
		C Available from 12.00 AM To 12.00 AM	
Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster Start printing after last page is spooled Start printing immediately Print glrectly to the printer Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first	Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster Start printing after last page is spooled Start printing immediately Print glicetly to the printer Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents Enable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	Drityer: Canon LBP3600	
Start printing immediately Print glacety to the printer Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first	Start prinning after last page is spooled Start prinning immediately Print griectly to the printer Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents Enable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster	
Print gliectly to the printer Bold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first	Print girectly to the printer Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first Keep printed documents Z prable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Print Processor	 Start printing arter last page is spooled Start printing immediately 	
Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first	Hold mismatched documents Print spooled documents first Keep printed documents Z pable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Prigt Processor	C Print directly to the printer	
Print spooled documents first	Print spooled documents first Keep printed documents Catable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	<u>H</u> old mismatched documents	
	Keep printed documents 7 Enable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	Print spooled documents first	
Keep printed documents	Z Enable advanced printing features Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	Keep printed documents	
Enable advanced printing features	Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	Enable advanced printing features	
Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page		Printing Defaults Print Processor Separator Page	

[Security] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

This sheet allows you to confirm the access permissions for each user.

Name		A <u>d</u> d
Administrators (2X:ENGAdministrators) CREATOR DWNER Everyone Everyone Power Users (2X:ENG\Power Users)		<u>R</u> emove
rmissions: Print Manage Printers Manage Documents	Allow V V V	Deny
Adyanced		

[Configuration]/[Device Settings] Sheet

The [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet allows you to specify the paper source options, procedure for displaying the Printer Status Window, and others.

Canon LBP3600 Properties			?
General Sharing Ports Advanced C	Color Management Security	Device Settings Profile	
Device Settings : Auto			
	Paper <u>S</u> ource Options:	250 Sheet Cassette x 3	_
	Duplex Unit		
	Spooling at Host:	Auto	<u>-</u>
	Printer Status Window:	(bar	
		<u>G</u> et Device Status	About
	ОК	Cancel Apply	Help

■ Paper Source Options (See p. 4-19)

Select the appropriate item when the optional paper feeders are installed in the printer.

Duplex Unit (See p. 4-19)

Place a checkmark when the optional duplex unit is installed in the printer.

Spooling at Host (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

You can specify whether spooling is performed at the Host.

■ Show Icon in the Taskbar (See p. 4-81)

When this option is checked, an icon for displaying the Printer Status Window appears in the taskbar on the Windows screen.

Get Device Status

Clicking [Get Device Status] automatically obtains the printer status etc. from the printer and reflects it in the settings of the printer driver.

[Profile] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

This sheet allows you to create and add new "Profiles" and edit the added "Profiles".

Profile List:	
Default Settings	Name:
* 2 on 1 [1-sided]	Comment
● 2-sided ● ④ Scale to Fit A4 ● ● Confidential	This setting enables you to print with all factory default settings. This setting is suitable for printing general business documents that include text and table.
View Settings	Add Eds Dglete
Define Document Property	w Profile Selection

Profile List

Lists the available "Profiles".

Name

Displays the name of the "Profile" selected in [Profile List].

■ Comment

Displays a comment about the "Profile" selected in [Profile List].

■ Add (See p. 4-71)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Add].

This dialog box allows you to enter [Name], [Icon], [Comment], and the printing preferences for the newly added "Profile" or the one that you want to edit.

ld/Edit Profile	ne Setun	Finishi	nal Pr	aper So	urcelí	ດີແຜ່ສິນ ໄ								?
<u>N</u> ame:		1.11.001	ngline	1001 O 01		atoreany I								
<u>l</u> con:			×				V	A4)			E	E		<mark>.</mark> ♪
Domment														×
											<u>E</u>	lestore	Default	s
									OK		Cano	el	н	elp

■ Edit (See p. 4-71)

The dialog box shown below is displayed by clicking [Edit].

This dialog box allows you to enter [Name], [Icon], [Comment], and the printing preferences for the newly added "Profile" or the one that you want to edit.

Add/Edit Profi	le													<u>?</u> ×
Attribution	age Setup	Finishi	ng Pa	aper So	urce (Quality								
<u>N</u> ame:	Sample	2												
<u>I</u> con:	•	[]	3		٦		V	A4)			E	đ		<mark>.</mark> .∙
<u>C</u> omment	Duples	<												*
														¥
											F	lestore	Default	
									 		<u>.</u>	Tearcolo	o ordani	
									OK		Cano	el	Н	elp

■ Delete (See p. 4-71)

Allows you to delete an added "Profile".

■ Import (See p. 4-71)

Allows you to import a "Profile" saved as a file and add it in the printer driver.

Export (See p. 4-71)

Allows you to save an added or edited "Profile" as a file.

■ Allow Profile Selection

Allows you to select a "Profile" in the [Document Properties] dialog box.

■ Allow Setting Edition

Allows you to add a new "Profile" setting that is different from the "Profiles" previously registered in the [Document Properties] dialog box.

Preview

The current settings is displayed on Preview in the [Page Setup] sheet, the [Paper Source] sheet, and the [Finishing] sheet. You can specify the settings for [Binding Location], [Page Layout], [Finishing] and others by clicking Preview.

Sanon LBP3600 Properties		<u>? ×</u>
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	2 Quality	
Profile: Default Settings	· 🕑 🖉	Output Method: SPrint
	Page <u>S</u> ize:	A4
	Output Size:	Match Page Size
5	<u>C</u> opies:	1 📩 [1 to 999]
	Urientaţion	A © Portrait A C Landscape
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Sheet
	Manual Scaling Scaling	100 📰 % (25 to 200)
View Settings	□ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
		Edjt Watermark
	Cystom Paper Size	Layout Options
		OK Cancel Help

Depending on which icon at the upper left on Preview (I) or) is selected, the operating procedure of Preview differs as follows:

■ When is selected

You can specify [Binding Location], [Page Layout], and [Print Style] ([1-sided Printing] and [2-sided Printing] only).

Left-clicking the edge of the document image allows you to specify [Binding Location].

The setting for [Page Layout] changes successively among [1 Page per Sheet], [2 Pages per Sheet], and [4 Pages per Sheet] by repeatedly left-clicking within the document image.

If the optional duplex unit is installed, you can switch between [1-sided Printing] and [2-sided Printing] by left-clicking the icon at the bottom right on Preview.

Also, right-clicking on Preview selects [1 Page per Sheet [1-sided]], [2 Pages per Sheet [1-sided]], or [4 Pages per Sheet [1-sided]]. If the optional duplex unit is installed, you can also select [1 Page per Sheet [2-sided]], [2 Pages per Sheet [2-sided]], or [4 Pages per Sheet [2-sided]].



You can specify the paper source and [Finishing].

Left-clicking the paper source image (multi-purpose tray or paper cassette image) on Preview specifies the paper source. If you want to switch the paper source automatically according to the size or type of paper, left-click [Auto] at the bottom right on Preview.

Also, right-clicking on Preview specifies [Finishing].

If [Different for First, Others, and Last], [Different for First, Second, Others, and Last], or [Different for Cover and Others] is selected for [Paper Selection], you can specify the paper source for each page.

Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

Multiple pages can be printed on one sheet of paper.

1 For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].



2 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then select the number of the pages to be printed on one sheet from [Page Layout].

The number of pages that can be selected is 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, or 16 (Pages per Sheet).

Canon LBP3600 Properties		<u>: [2</u>
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality	
Profile: 🎦 Default Settings	• 🚇 🗹	Output Method: S Print
At (ScaingAudo)	Page Size: Output Size: Corientation Page Layout: Magual Scaling Scaling: Cystom Paper Size	A4 Image: Size Image: Market Page Size Image: Size Image: Image: Size

3 When 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, or 16 pages per sheet is selected, [Page Order] appears. Select the desired page order.

Canon LBP3600 Properties	ce Quality	<u>×[?</u>
Profile: 卢 Default Settings	- 🖳 🗹	Output Method: SPrint
A4 [ScalingAuto] View Settings	Page Size: Output Sige: Cories: Direntation Page Layout: Page Qirder: Watemark:	A4 Y Match Page Size Y 1 [1 to 393] A C Landscape Image: A Pages per Sheet Y Image: Across from Left Y
	Cystom Paper Size	Down from Left Across from Right Down from Right Down from Right



The options under the [Page Order] pull-down menu differ depending on the paper orientation or the number of pages to be printed on one sheet.



Scaling Print Output

You can select a scale when [1 Page per Sheet] is selected for [Page Layout].

The scale factor will be adjusted automatically when [Page Size] and [Output Size] are different.

The scale factor can be specified manually.

You can specify from 25 to 200 %.

Scaling a Document Automatically

1 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then specify the page size in [Page Size].



2 Specify the paper size in [Output Size].

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The scale factor will be set automatically depending on the sizes specified in [Page Size] and [Output Size].

Scaling a Document Manually

- Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then specify the page size in [Page Size].
- **2** Specify the paper size in [Output Size].
- **3** Place a checkmark for [Manual Scaling], then specify the value in the spin box.



4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

Poster Printing

You can magnify a single page image and print it out on more than one page. You can join these printouts together to make one large poster.

1 For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].



Display the [Page Setup] sheet and select [Poster (N x N)] (N = 2, 3, 4) from [Page Layout].

Canon LBP3600 Properties		?
Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality	
Profile: Pi Default Settings	- 望 💇	Output Method: 🔇 Print
A (ScalingAuto) View Setting:	Page Size: Output Size: Copies: Orientation Page Layout: Manual Scaling Scaling: Watermark:	A Y Match Page Size Y 1 [1 to 999] A Postrait A Landscape I Page per Sheet I Pages per Sheet
	Custom Paper Size	8 Pages per Sheet
		16 Pages per Sheet
		Poster [2 x 2]
		Poster [4 x 4]

A layout image of the printout appears on Preview.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

- The printing order of the printouts (separated into multiple pages) becomes "Upper Left to Right".
- When you perform poster printing, the watermark printing and layout options are disabled.
- When you perform poster printing, the setting for [Page Order] is disabled.

Using the Printing Functions **4-47**

Watermark Printing

You can superimpose watermarks (such as "COPY", "DRAFT", etc.) over the documents created in the application. Select the desired character string from the list of the character strings registered as watermarks. Also, you can add new watermarks or edit the added watermarks by clicking [Edit Watermark] in the [Page Setup] sheet.

Watermark Printing

For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].

Canon	LBP3600	Prope	ties	6		?
ieneral	Sharing	Ports	Advanced	Color Management] Secure 1	evice Settings offie	
Device 9	iettings : N	1anual				
				Paper Source Options:	250 Sheet Cassette x 3	•
				Duplex Unit		
				Spooling at Host:	Auto	
				Printer Status Window:	ar	
					<u>G</u> et Device Status	About
						1
				OK	Cancel Apply	Help

2 Display the [Page Setup] sheet and place a checkmark for [Watermark].



3 Select the character string to print as a watermark from the list on the right of [Watermark].



4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

Editing Watermarks

For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].

Canon LBP3600 Properties			? :
General Sharing Ports Advanc	ed Color Management Secure	Device Settings offile	
Device Settings : Manual			
	Paper <u>S</u> ource Options:	250 Sheet Cassette x 3	•
	✓ Duplex Unit		
	Spooling at Host	Auto	
	Printer Status Window:	par	
		Get Device Status	hout
			-gour
	ОК	Cancel Apply	Help

2 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, place a checkmark for [Watermark], and then click [Edit Watermark].



The [Edit Watermark] dialog box is displayed.

	Watermark List:		
	 FILE COPY FINAL 		
	*PRELIMINAF *PROOF	iY	
J ∦ I ·⊤	•TOP SECRE	T	
	sample	Add	Delete
I	<u>N</u> ame:	sample	
	<u>⊺</u> ext:	CONFIDENTIAL	
Position	Eont:	Arial	
🛶 🖄: 👘 0 [-50 to 50]	Style:	Regular	-
⊥Y: 0 [-50 to 50] <u>Move to Center</u>	Sige:	72 - Points [1 to 500]	
Angle	Color:	Medium Gray	-
Upward Left to Right	Border	Print Style	
C Downward Left to Right Set Angle:	ABCS	Circle C Tran	sparent Iap
• <u>• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • </u>	Print on Firs	t Page <u>O</u> nly	

3 Specify the following items as needed:

[Position]:	Specify the position to print the selected watermark on the document. Enter X and Y axis values between -50 and 50.
[Angle]:	Specify the angle to print the selected watermark on the document.
[Name]:	Enter the name of the added watermark to be displayed for [Watermark] in the [Page Setup] sheet.
[Text]:	Enter the characters to be printed as the watermark.
[Font]:	Select the font to be used for the watermark (True Type fonts only).
[Style]:	Select the font style for the watermark.
[Size]:	Specify the font size for the watermark.
[Color]:	Specify the color for the watermark. Since this printer is a monochrome printer, all the watermark colors are printed in grayscale.
[Border]:	Specify whether a border encloses the watermark when printed.
[Print Style]:	Select the watermark type from [Transparent] or [Overlap].
[Print on First Page Only]:	Place a checkmark when printing the watermark only on the first page of the document.

⊘ NOTE

- When adding a new watermark, click [Add].
- You cannot delete the default watermarks.

4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Page Setup] sheet reappears.

Specifying a Custom Paper Size

Perform the following procedure to specify a desired paper size:

NOTE

To specify a custom paper size, display the dialog box shown below.

- For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003

Display the [Document Properties] dialog box in the [Printers] folder (the [Printers and Faxes] folder for Windows XP/Server 2003).

- For Windows 98/Me Display the [Printer Properties] dialog box in the [Printers] folder.

1 Display the [Page Setup] sheet, then click [Custom Paper Size].

Canon LBP3600 Printing Prefer	ences :e Quality	<u>?</u> x
Profile: Default Settings	- 😤 🗹	Output Method: S Print
A4 (Scaling Auto) Yew Settings	Page Size: Output Size: Orientation Page Layout: Magual Scaling Scaling: Watemark:	A4 Y Match Page Size Y 1 1 [1 to 999] A C Dottait A C Landscape 1 1 Page per Sheet Y 100 2 \$ (25 to 200) Y CONFIDENTIAL Y Y
	Custom Paper Size	Layout Options
		OK Cancel Apply Help

The [Custom Paper Size Settings] dialog box is displayed.

Name	Cine	i land	
	5120		New Name
Letter 11x17 Legal Executive A5 B5 A4 B4 A3	215.9 × 279.4 279.4 × 431.8 215.9 × 355.6 184.2 × 266.7 148.5 × 210.0 182.0 × 257.0 210.0 × 297.0 257.0 × 364.0 297.0 × 420.0		Unit Millimeter C Inch Paper Size
Delete			Register

2 Specify the following items as needed:

[Paper List]:	Displays the names and sizes of standard paper and added custom paper.
[Name of Custom Paper Size]:	Enter the name of the custom paper size to be registered. Up to 31 characters can be entered.
[Unit]:	Specify the unit (Millimeter or Inch) to be used when setting the custom paper size.
[Paper Size]:	Specify the height and width of the custom paper size (Height \geq Width). Specify the custom paper size using portrait orientation (Height \geq Width) within valid setting values.



NOTE

In Windows 98/Me, up to 30 custom paper sizes can be added. In Windows 2000/ XP/Server 2003, the number depends on the system environment.

4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].
You can print with borders, printing date, and/or page numbers.

1 For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].





Profile: Default Setting	urce Quality Is	Output Method: S Print
	Page Size: Output Size: Copies: Orientation	A4 Match Page Size 1 mm 1 mm 0 Potrait
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Sheet
Yiew Settings	<mark>™</mark> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL Edit Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>R</u> estore Defaults

The [Layout Options] dialog box is displayed.

yout Options	?
	Edging:
	None
	Print <u>D</u> ate:
	Off
	Print <u>U</u> ser Name:
	0ff
	Print Page <u>N</u> umber:
	Off

3 Specify the following items as needed:

[Edging]:	Select the type of edging to print as a border.
[Print Date]:	Prints the date. Specify the printing position of the date from the list.
[Print User Name]	Prints the user name that is registered in the computer. Specify the printing position of the user name from the list.
[Print Page Number]:	Prints page numbers. Specify the printing position of the page numbers from the list.

4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Page Setup] sheet reappears.

Selecting an Objective

You can select the print style (1-sided Printing, 2-sided Printing, or Booklet Printing). The optional duplex unit is required for 2-sided printing and booklet printing.



IMPORTANT

For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, [Booklet Printing] is unavailable when [Disabled] is selected for [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet.

1 Display the [Finishing] sheet, then select [1-sided Printing], [2-sided Printing], or [Booklet Printing] for [Print Style].



[1-sided Printing]: Prints on one side of paper.

- [2-sided Printing]: Prints on both sides of paper using the optional duplex unit.
- [Booklet Printing]: Prints booklets using the optional duplex unit. Booklet printing involves printing 2 pages on both sides of a sheet of paper in the appropriate order so that the printouts become a booklet when folded into two. To perform detailed settings for booklet printing, click the [Booklet] button.

2 When [Booklet Printing] is selected, click [Booklet] and specify the following items as needed:

Booklet Printing Method	C MIReast at Dead
	C Divide into Sets
***	15 - Sheets per Set [1 to 15]
Specify Booklet Gutter:	5 🚍 mm [0 to 30]

[Specify Booklet Gutter]:

Specify the unit for booklet printing (printing all pages at once or by dividing into several portions).

Place a checkmark when specifying the gutter on booklet printing. Enter the value of the distance (0 to 30 mm) from the center line (fold line) in the middle of the paper.

*The size of the image is automatically reduced so that the entire image remains in the print area.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations

You can specify the paper alignment on output when printing a document of mixed paper sizes or orientations.

1 Display the [Finishing] sheet, place a checkmark for [Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations], and then click [Details].



The [Detailed Settings] dialog box is displayed.

Paper Alignment	
Pattern 1	
C Pattern 2	
++ <u>G</u> utter:	0
Beduce and Arr	ange
3.* I I P I I A P P I I I A N I A	unge

2 Select the paper alignment pattern for printing a document of mixed paper sizes or orientations.

Specify the following items as needed:

[Gutter]:	When a value is specified, a margin of white space is created on one side of the printout (This margin is called [Gutter]). The gutter is useful when binding pages. Valid gutter values range from 0 to 30 mm. When a gutter value is specified, the print area is reduced.
[Image Processing]:	When [Gutter] is specified, the position of the page image is adjusted to make room for the gutter. At this point, you can select whether to reduce the size of the image to fit the remaining space. When [Reduce and Arrange] is selected, the size of the image is automatically reduced to adjust the page image position so that the entire image remains in the print area. When [Stagger Image with Size as-is] is selected, the page image position is adjusted without changing its size. Any part of the print image that lies outside the print area will be missing in the printout.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

You can specify a gutter on the printouts. Valid gutter values range from 0 to 30 mm.

When a gutter is specified, the position of the page image is adjusted to make room for the gutter. At this point, you can select whether to reduce the size of the image to fit the remaining space.

1 Display the [Finishing] sheet, specify the side on which the gutter is to be located in [Binding Location], and then click [Gutter].

age Setup Transmis Paper Source	Quality
Profile: 🗾 Default Settings	🗾 🔄 💯 Output <u>M</u> ethod: 🚳 Print 💌
	Print Style
	1-sided Printing
	2-sided Printing
	C Booklet Printing Booklet
	~1 • Off
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	(////S)
A4 [Scaling:Auto] View Settings	C Collate
A4 [Scaling:Auto] View Settings	C Collate
44 [Scaling:Auto] View Settings	C Collete

The [Gutter Settings] dialog box is displayed.

++ Gutter		mm I0 to 3	
Image Proc	essing		-1
C Stagge	r Image with S	ize as-is	
	ΟΚ	Cancel	Help

2 Specify the value in the spin box.

Specify the following items as needed:

[Image Processing]: When [Gutter] is specified, the position of the page image is adjusted to make room for the gutter. At this point, you can select whether to reduce the size of the image to fit the remaining space. When [Reduce and Arrange] is selected, the size of the image is automatically reduced to adjust the page image position so that the entire image remains in the print area. When [Stagger Image with Size as-is] is selected, the page image position is adjusted without changing its size. Any part of the print image that lies outside the print area will be missing in the printout.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

Specifying the Finishing Method

You can specify a variety of options for print processing.

1 Display the [Finishing] sheet, then click [Finishing Details].

Canon LBP3600 Properties			?)>
Page Sett Finishing F per Source Q	uality		
Profile: Default Settings	💽 🖳 🗹	Output Method:	Print
	Print Style	1-sided Printing 2-sided Printing Booklet Printing	Bookjet
	Print with Miged F Binding Location: Long Edge	(aper Sizes/Orientations	¥ <u>G</u> utter
A4 [Scaling:Auto]	C C	Off Collate	
	(Finishing Details	Restore Defaults
		ОК	Cancel Help

The [Finishing Details] dialog box is displayed.

Detect Paper Size in Tray		
Rotate Print Data 180 Degrees		
🔽 Use Skip Blank Pages Mode		
	Advanced S	iettings

2 Specify the following items as needed:

[Detect Paper Size in Tray]:	When this option is checked, a message appears and the job is paused if the setting for [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet for the current job is different from that for the previous job. To resume the job, click the [Resolve Error] button in the Printer Status Window or load the appropriate paper. However, for the job that takes place immediately after cycling the power or removing paper, a message does not appear, and the job uses the currently loaded paper regardless of the setting for [Output Size].
[Rotate Print Data 180 Degrees]:	Prints by rotating the image 180 degrees. This option is useful for printing envelopes and index cards that can be fed only in specific orientations.
[Use Skip Blank Pages Mode]:	When this option is checked, blank pages are not output if the job includes blank pages.

3 Click [Advanced Settings] in the [Finishing Details] dialog box.



The [Advanced Settings] dialog box is displayed.

Timage meginement:	jun	
Fixing Mode.	Iou	
EMF Spooling		
■ Print Last Page in 1-side	d Mode when 2-sided Printing is Sel	
Print on the Back of Prin	nted Paper from the Multi-purpose Tr	ay

4 Specify the following items as needed:

[Image Refinement]:	Specify whether to apply Image Refinement. When Image Refinement is applied, jagged lines of text and graphics are printed smoothly.
[Fixing Mode]:	Switch the fixing mode of the printer when the toner does not fix well. [Mode 3] enhances the toner fixing the most, and [Mode 2] and [Mode 1] follow respectively. [Mode 4] enhances the toner fixing the least.
[EMF Spooling] (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only):	Specify whether the print data is spooled in EMF (meta file) format. When this option is checked, the data is spooled in EMF format.
[Print Last Page in 1-sided Mode when 2-sided Printing is Set]:	When this option is checked and the last page for the 2-sided printing or booklet printing is 1-sided printing, the printer can print faster than normal 2-sided printing.
[Print on the Back of Printed Paper from the Multi-purpose Tray]:	Place a checkmark for this option if a paper jam occurs when printing previously printed paper.

5 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Finishing Details] dialog box reappears.

Specifying the Paper Feed Method

You can specify various settings for the paper feed method.





2 Specify the following items as needed:

[Paper Selection]:

[Paper Source]:

- · [First Page]
- · [Second Page]
- · [Cover Page]
- · [Other Pages]
- · [Last Page]
- · [Interleaf Sheet]

[Paper Type]:

You can specify the paper feed method.

You can specify the paper source. Options that can be specified depend on the items selected in [Paper Selection].

Specify the type of paper to be used.

Pause when Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray]:	Specify whether the printer should pause a job and display a message or continue the job when feeding paper from the multi-purpose tray. When this option is checked, a message is displayed and the printer pauses the job. Make sure that the paper size specified in the printer driver is the same as the size of paper in the multi-purpose tray and click the [Resolve Error] button in the Printer Status Window.
Continue Printing with the Multi-purpose Tray]:	Specify whether the printer should switch the paper source to the multi-purpose tray automatically when a cassette has run out of paper during a job and the paper specified in [Output Size] in the [Page Setup] sheet is not loaded in any other cassette.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

Specifying the Print Quality

You can perform optimum printing by simply selecting the appropriate item from [Objective].

1 Display the [Quality] sheet, then specify the settings for [Objective].

i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		Output <u>M</u> ethod:) Print 💌
	Dejective: Graphics Photos Designs [CAD] Web Pages		Details
<u>[</u>]	This setting is used w	men pinning documents in g	ci licial.

For more detailed settings, click the [Details] button.

The [Detailed Settings] dialog box is displayed.

B & W Halftones:	E Pattern 1	
I Print <u>C</u> olored Text a	nd Lines in Black	
📕 Enable Image Corre	ction	
Toger Density:		<u></u>
	Light	Da

2 Specify the following items as needed:

[B & W Halftones]:	Select the display pattern of subtle gradation (medium gradation) for black-and-white data.
[Print Colored Text and Lines in Black]:	Place a checkmark for this option when colored text or thin lines of CAD data etc. drop out or appear broken in printouts. You should be able to print thin lines finely.
[Enable Image Correction]:	When image data such as photographic images are printed at enlarged sizes in the application, the printed images can look rough or jagged. Specify the settings for smoothing the output of low-resolution image data.
[Toner Density]:	Adjust the toner density for the print data. Adjust the density by dragging the [Toner Density] slider from side to side.
[Use Toner Save]:	By using this function, you can save toner consumption, since some parts of the data are omitted from the job.

3 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

Grayscale Settings

Grayscale Settings

1 Display the [Quality] sheet, place a checkmark for [Manual Grayscale Settings], and then click [Grayscale Settings].



The [Grayscale Settings] dialog box is displayed.



2 Display the [Grayscale Adjustment] sheet, then specify the following items as needed:

[Brightness]:

Adjust the brightness for the print data. Adjust the brightness by dragging the [Brightness] slider from side to side. [Contrast]:

Adjust the contrast for the print data. Adjust the contrast by dragging the [Contrast] slider from side to side.

3 Display the [Matching] sheet, then specify the following items as needed:

[Matching Mode]:	Specify the method for color correction.
[Matching Method]:	Specify which element is to be prioritized in matching.
[Monitor Profile]:	Select the appropriate item (the Profiles registered in the computer are displayed) for the monitor or scanner in use.
[Gamma]:	When [Gamma Adjustment] is selected for [Matching Mode], color is adjusted by brightness without performing matching.

4 Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

The [Quality] sheet reappears.

Printing Grayscale Sample (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only)

You can print an adjusted grayscale sample after specifying the settings in the [Grayscale Adjustment] sheet. The after-adjustment image is printed in the center of the paper, and the images whose [Brightness] and [Contrast] are changed by graduation are each printed around the after-adjustment image. This is useful to adjust the grayscale of the printout.

1 For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, display the [Device Settings] sheet and select [Auto] from [Spooling at Host].

Canon	LBP3600 P	roper	ties			?
General	Sharing F	orts	Advanced	Color Management Secure E	Device Settings ofile	
Device 9	iettings : Ma	nual				
				Paper Source Options:	250 Sheet Cassette x 3	•
				Duplex Unit		
				Spooling at Host	Auto	
		s d		Printer Status Window:		
		17 17		🔲 Show Icon in the Taskt	par	
					<u>G</u> et Device Status	About
				ΠΚ	Cancel Applu	Help

2 Display the [Quality] sheet, place a checkmark for [Manual Grayscale Settings], and then click [Grayscale Settings].



- **3** Specify the items in the [Grayscale Settings] dialog box as needed, then click [OK].
- **4** Go back to the [Quality] sheet and place a checkmark for [Print Grayscale Sample].



5 Confirm the settings, then click the [OK] button.

When printing a grayscale sample, be sure that [1 Page per Sheet] is selected for [Page Layout] in the [Page Setup] sheet.

6 Click [OK] or [Print].

The grayscale sample is printed.

When you are finished with printing grayscale samples, remove the checkmark from [Print Grayscale Sample].

Specifying Profiles

You can save or import all the printing preferences specified in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] sheets at once. You can also add, edit or select the settings.

Save the printing preferences as a "Profile" using the following procedure.

Make sure that any one of the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source] and [Quality] sheets is displayed, then perform the following procedure.

NOTE

- For Windows 98/Me, up to 50 "Profiles" can be added. To add up to 50 "Profiles" for each user account, double-click [My Computer] → [Control Panel] → [Passwords] to display the [User Profiles] sheet, and then select [Users can customize their preferences and desktop settings. Windows switches to your personal settings when you log on.].
- For Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, up to 50 "Profiles" for each user account can be added.
- If the printer name has been changed, any saved "Profiles" cannot be imported. To import the saved "Profiles", change the printer name to its previous one.
- Uninstallation of the printer driver does not delete the Profile information. The "Profiles" become available after re-installing the printer driver.
- The Profile information file saved on Windows 98/Me cannot be used on Windows 2000/ XP/Server 2003 and vice versa.
- Selecting a "Profile" does not change the setting for [Page Size].

Adding a Profile





The [Add Profile] dialog box is displayed.

2 Enter the name of the "Profile" for [Name].

[Icon] allows you to select the icon for the "Profile". Enter any comments in [Comment] as needed.

<u>N</u> ame:	1						
<u>l</u> con:		٦	3	 ٦	P	<u>*</u>	
<u>C</u> omment:				 	 	1	
							View Settings

Ø NOTE

Up to 31 characters for [Name] and 255 characters for [Comment] can be entered.

• Confirming the Printer Settings

Click [View Settings].



 $\hfill\square$ When [OK] is clicked, the [Add Profile] dialog box reappears.

Setting Item	Contents	
Page Size	A4	
Paper Size	210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	
	8.27 in x 11.69 in	
Output Size	Match Page Size	
Paper Size	210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	
	8.27 in x 11.69 in	
Copies	1	
Orientation	Portrait	
Page Layout	1 Page per Sheet	
Manual Scaling	Off	
	100 %	
Watermark	Off	
Edging	None	
Print Date	Olff	
4		- F

3 Click [OK].

The Properties dialog box reappears.

Check if the name of the added "Profile" is on the [Profile] list.

Editing/Deleting a Profile

1

You can change or save the Profile information or delete it from [Profile List].

Canon LBP3600 Properties		
Page Setup Finishing Paper So Profile: Default Setting		Output Method: Print
	Page Size:	A4
	Output Size:	Match Page Size
6	<u>C</u> opies:	1 to 999]
	Orientation	A C Landscape
	Page Layout	1 Page per Sheet
	Magual Scaling Scaling:	100 🚅 🌫 [25 to 200]
View Settings	☐ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
	Ð	Edjt Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Lavout Ontions Bestore Defaults

The [Edit Profile] dialog box is displayed.

2 Edit the Profile information.

Edit Profile								? ×
Profile List:		<u>N</u> ame:		samp	e			
Default Settings		lcon:						
2 on 1 [1-sided]			72		E)		P	A4)
2 on 1 [2-sided]		T	-		-			•
• 2-sided • M Seale to EX A4		Commo	n.)-					
Confidential		Dunley						
sample		L'apici						_
	In I							
	10							<u> </u>
⊻iew Settings D <u>e</u> lete	1		lmp	ort	1	E	sport	1
	-							
Apply Settings from Application								
		_	01/	-	0	. 1		. 1
		_	UK		Lance		He	ip

• Editing a Profile

- □ You can change the settings for [Name], [Icon], and [Comment].
- By clicking [10] or [10], you can change the order of the selected "Profile".
- □ When [Import] is clicked, the Profile information is imported from the previously saved file.
- When [Export] is clicked, the selected Profile information is saved into the file. The "Profile" saved in the file can be used again even if it is deleted from the list.
- □ When [Apply Settings from Application] is checked, the settings for [Page Size], [Orientation], and [Copies] specified in the application are applied for printing. The settings for these items in the application stay enabled even if the Profile is changed.

Deleting a Profile

U When [Delete] is clicked, the "Profile" is deleted from the list.

IMPORTANT

You can delete only custom "Profiles". You cannot delete default "Profiles". Also, you cannot delete the "Profile" currently selected in each sheet.

PageComposer

You can combine two jobs into one and change job settings for the combined job. You can edit a job in another application.

You can also preview the job.

Make sure that any one of the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], or [Quality] sheet is displayed in the [Document Properties] dialog box, then perform the following procedure:

1 Select [Edit and Preview] from the list on the right of the [Profile] list.

Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality	e se la su
Profile: Default Settings		Output Method: Print
	Page Size:	Combine print jobs, e Edit and Preview
	<u>C</u> opies:	1 [1 to 999]
	Unentațion	A C Landscape
	Page <u>L</u> ayout:	1 Page per Sheet
	Magual Scaling Scaling:	100 🗯 % [25 to 200]
View Settings	□ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
<u></u>		Edit Watermark
	Custom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>R</u> estore Defaults

2 The message that the output method is going to be switched to the [Edit and Preview] mode is displayed. Click [OK].

Printer Ir	formation
٩	The output method will be switched to [Edit and Preview].
	ОК





4 Click [OK] or [Print].

The [Canon PageComposer] dialog box is displayed and the job is displayed on a list.

🥮 Canon PageComposer	- Canon LBP3600			_ 🗆 🗙
Eile Edit Move to Help				
SSY M	<u> 時月</u> 15 15	12 I)		
Document Name	Total Pages	Layout Data	Comments	
Manual_2.pdf	10	1 Page per Sheet		
For Help, press F1				1.

5 Repeat Step 1 to 4 for the jobs that you want to edit.

6 Edit the jobs on the list in the [Canon PageComposer] dialog box.



- For more details on the setting procedures for the [Canon PageComposer] dialog box, see Help for Canon PageComposer.
- When the [Edit and Preview] mode is selected in the [Printer Properties] dialog box and [] (Lock) is set, the [Canon PageComposer] dialog box appears each time you print.

Viewing the Printer Settings/Restoring the Default Settings

You can view or restore the default settings for all the printing preferences specified in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], [Quality], and [Configuration]/ [Device Settings] sheets at once.

Make sure that any one of the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source] and [Quality] sheets is displayed, then perform the following procedure.

Ø NOTE

A preview of the settings is displayed on each sheet. This allows you to confirm the print image on Preview.

Viewing the Printer Settings

1 Click [View Settings].

Canon LBP3600 Properties	l Oustinul	<u>? ×</u>
Profile: Default Settings		Output Method: S Print
	Page Size:	A4 ▼ Match Page Size ▼ 1 = [1 to 999] A Pottrait
	Page Layout:	1 Page per Sheet
View Settings	☐ <u>W</u> atermark:	CONFIDENTIAL
	Cystom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>R</u> estore Defaults
		OK Cancel Help

The [View Settings] dialog box is displayed.

Setting item	Lontents	^
Page Size	A4	
Paper Size	210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	
	8.27 in x 11.69 in	
Output Size	Match Page Size	
Paper Size	210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	
	8.27 in x 11.69 in	
Copies	1	
Orientation	Portrait	
Page Layout	1 Page per Sheet	
Manual Scaling	Off	
	100 %	-
Watermark	Off	
Edging	None	
Print Date	Off	
•		

By clicking the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], [Quality], or [Configuration]/[Device Settings] tab, you can view the printing preferences for each sheet in a list.

2 Click [OK].

The previous sheet reappears.

Restoring the Default Settings

To restore the default settings, click [Restore Defaults].

You can restore the default settings only in the same sheet or dialog box as [Restore Defaults] displayed.

The settings in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], [Quality] and [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheets cannot be restored all at once to the default settings.

Printer Status Window 4-79



Printer Status Window

The Printer Status Window shows the printer status of LBP3600 (such as the operation status and job information) with messages, animations, sounds, and icons.

Ø NOTE

To activate a sound, your computer must have a PCM synthesizer, and have the driver for PCM synthesizer installed.

Functions on the Printer Status Window

The functions on the Printer Status Window are the same on both Windows 98/Me and Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003.

For more details on operations, see Online Help.



I Menu Bar	
Job Menu	Performs a job operation (pause, resume, or delete). Also, when a job is paused for some reason, you can resume the job by selecting [Resolve Error]. The current job for which you have no access permission is grayed out.
Options Menu	Allows you to specify the environment settings for the Printer Status Window, cleans the fixing roller etc., and adjusts the printing position.
Help Menu	Displays Online Help.
I Other Functions	
lcon	Displays the current printer status.
Message Area	Displays the current printer status with a short message.
Message Area (Auxiliary	 Displays additional information when an error occurs, etc.
Animation Area	Shows an animated graphic indicating the current printer status. The graphic background changes from blue (normal) to orange when some user action is required, or to red when a Warning is issued.
Refresh Button	Obtains the printer status and refreshes the Printer Status Window display.
Resolve Error Button	Allows you to resume a job when the job is paused for some reason.
Current Print Job Tab	Progress Bar: Indicates the progress of the current job by showing the number of printed pages or changing graphic background.
	Pause Job Button: Pauses the job temporarily.
	Job Information Area: Displays the document name, user name, and computer name for the job.
My Job Operation Tab	Job Status Message Area: Displays a message about the status of the job.
	Job Operation Button: Performs a job operation (pause, resume, or delete). The current job for which you have no access permission is grayed out.

Job Information Area: Displays the document name, user name, computer name, and status of the job.

Status Bar Indicates how the printer is connected (Local or Network).

Instructions for operating the menu are displayed during menu operation.

Displaying the Printer Status Window

There are the following two ways to display the Printer Status Window:

• Start up by clicking [] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet in the [Printer Properties] dialog box.

Canon LBP3600 Properties Page Setup Finishing Paper Source	Quality	<u>?</u>
Profile: Default Settings	- 🖫 🗹	Output Method: SPrint
	Page Size: Output Size: Copies: Orientation	A4 X Match Page Size X 1 [1 to 999] A) © Potrait A) © Landscape
	Page Layout: Magual Scaling Scaling:	1 Page per Sheet
A4 (Scaling:Auto)	L Matermark:	CONFIDENTIAL Z
	Cystom Paper Size	Layout Options <u>B</u> estore Defaults
		OK Cancel Help

• Display the [Printer Properties] dialog box and display the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet, and then place a checkmark for [Show Icon in the Taskbar]. The icon for the Printer Status Window is displayed in the Windows taskbar. Click the icon, then click [Canon LBP3600] to start up.



The Printer Status Window appears automatically during printing or when an error occurs. If [When Starting Printing] is not selected in the [Preferences] dialog box in the [Options] menu, the Printer Status Window does not appear during printing.

Setting Preferences

The Preferences menu allows you to display the Printer Status Window automatically, specify the sound settings, and make the Printer Status Window monitor the printer status.

■ [Display Printer Status Window] Group

- When Starting Printing
 The Printer Status Window appears automatically each time print starts.
- Only when Errors Occur The Printer Status Window appears automatically only when an error occurs during printing.
- Not Display Automatically The Printer Status Window does not appear automatically.
- Always Display on Top The Printer Status Window is always on top of all the other windows on the desktop.

■ [Monitor Printer Status] Group

- Only while Displaying Printer Status Window The Printer Status Window monitors the printer status only while it is displayed.
- Only while Printing The Printer Status Window monitors the printer status only while printing.
- Always

The Printer Status Window always monitors the printer status.

• Notify the Printer of the Time

If [Always] is selected, the time specified in your computer is reported to the printer by placing a checkmark for [Notify the Printer of the Time]. Place a checkmark when the optional network board cannot obtain the time from the NTP server.

■ [Tone Settings] Group

Enabled All

A sound is played with a message displayed.

- Enable only when Error Occurs A sound is played only when an error occurs.
- Disabled

No sound is played.



Preference	-5	
Utility Device Set	hinne	
Device Set	ungs	
		Ś
urrent Print Job Title	My Job Operation	II
urrent Print Job Title Document Name	My-Job Operation	II II
Title Document Nai User Name Computer Name	My Job Operation	

The [Preferences] dialog box is displayed.

2 Confirm each of the settings, then click [OK].

references	? ×
Display Printer Status Window	
Display Settings	
When Starting Printing	
C Only when Errors Occur	
C Not Display Automatically	
Always Display on I op	
Monitor Printer Status	
Only while Displaying Printer Status Window	
C Only while Printing	
C Always	
Notify the Printer of the Time	
Tone Settings	
Enabled All	
C Enable only when Error Occurs	
C Disabled	
OK Cancel	Help

Ø NOTE

For detailed information on operations for the Printer Status Window, see Online Help.

[Utility] Menu

The [Utility] menu cleans the fixing roller etc. and prints the printer status.

Cleaning 1

Cleans the fixing roller of the printer. Clean it when the front or back of printouts has smudge marks. For more details, see "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 5-21.

Cleaning 2

Cleans the transfer roller and photosensitive drum. Clean them after replacing the toner cartridge or when the print quality deteriorates. For more details, see "Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum," on p. 5-26.

Printer Status Print

Prints the optional settings of the printer, the settings for [Device Settings] in the [Options] menu, and the current printer status such as the total number of printouts. For more details, see "Confirming the Printer Features," on p. 7-60.

Network Status Print

Prints the version of the optional network board or TCP/IP settings. For more details, see "Chapter 4 Troubleshooting" in Network Guide.

Printing Position Adjustment Print

Display the [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box. Select the paper source of which you want to check the printing position in the [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box, print the position adjustment page, and then check the printing position. For more details, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 5-28.

[Device Settings] Menu

You can specify the settings related to printer troubles, such as alleviating a flickering phenomenon during printing and adjusting the printing position.

■ 2-sided Special Mode

Place a checkmark for this option if paper jams occur frequently during 2-sided printing. Printing speed will be slower than when performing regular 2-sided printing.

Graphics Special Mode

Dots may appear over the images when printing graphics data that contains many halftones. In this case, place a checkmark for this option. When printing text data, smudge marks of spattering toner may appear around the text. In this case, remove the checkmark.

■ Lighten Flicker Mode

Place a checkmark for this option when computer screens or fluorescent lights near the printer flicker during printing (flickering phenomenon). The flickering phenomenon can be alleviated.

Print Position Adjustment

Check the printing position with the position alignment page that is output in [Printing Position Adjustment Print] in [Utility] in the [Options] menu and adjust the printing position with this option (moves in the horizontal direction only). For more details, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 5-28.

[Refresh]

Selecting [Refresh] from the [Options] menu obtains the latest printer status and refreshes the Printer Status Window display.

You can obtain the same result by clicking [[] (Refresh) in the Printer Status Window.

[Resolve Error]

When a job is paused for some reason, you can resume the job by selecting [Resolve Error] from the [Job] menu. Resuming a job by selecting [Resolve Error] may cause unexpected print results. [Resolve Error] is unavailable in any of the following cases:

- When the job is paused due to printer error such as a paper jam and paper-out condition
- When another user's job is paused ([Resolve Error] is available in the print server if the printer is shared on a network)

You can obtain the same result by clicking [_____] (Resolve Error) in the Printer Status Window.

IMPORTANT

If a message that says "Insufficient Disk Space" is displayed, delete unnecessary files, then select [Resolve Error].

Displaying Status When a Print Server is Used

The status of a network printer can be displayed on the client's Printer Status Window as well as on the print server's.

If the print server is not running when the Printer Status Window starts up, the status will appear automatically when the print server starts up.

- Printer Status of the Print Server
 - Displaying the Printer Status Window and Job Operation

[Current Print	t Job] Tab	[My Job Oper	ation] Tab		
[Job Information Area]	[Pause Job] Button	[Job [Job Information Area] Buttons		Job (Operation
	Enabled*1	Displays the first job ^{*2}	Enabled	Pause Job:	Pauses all the jobs
Displays the first job				Resume Job:	Resumes all the jobs
				Delete Job:	Deletes the first job

*1 The [My Job Operation] tab is displayed by clicking the [Pause Job] button.

*2 If any job is printed by the computer as the print server, the job is displayed.

- Plays a sound.
- If the print server is running Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, the status is not displayed when no one is logged on.
- Client's Printer Status
 - Displaying the Printer Status Window and Job Operation

[Current P	rint Job] Tab	[My Job Oper	ation] Tab		
[Job Information Area]	[Pause Job] Button	[Job Information Area]	[Job Operation] Buttons	Job Ope	eration
Displays the first job in the print server	When your job is displayed in [Job Information Area]: Enabled* When another user's job is displayed in [Job Information Area]: Disabled	Displays your first job	Enabled	Pause Job: Resume Job: Delete Job:	Pauses all your jobs Resumes all your jobs Deletes your first job

* The [My Job Operation] tab is displayed by clicking the [Pause Job] button.

- You cannot use the [Resolve Error] button when another user's job is paused.
- While another user's job is being printed, the progress bar is displayed in gray.
- A sound is played only from the client whose user name is verified by the print server.

NOTE

To display the status for a job that is requested via a network, an environment in which the TCP/IP protocol can be used is required.

Routine Maintenance



This chapter describes the procedures for maintaining the printer such as replacing the cartridges and cleaning the printer.

When a Message Appears	
Using Up Ioner.	
Storing the Toner Cartridge	
Cleaning the Fixing Roller.	
Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum	
Adjusting the Printing Position	
Cleaning the Printer	
Moving the Printer.	
Handling the Printer	
Precautions for Handling the Printer	
Precaution for Storing the Printer	

Replacing the Toner Cartridge

This section describes how to replace or handle a toner cartridge and precautions on storing it.

When a Message Appears

Toner cartridge is a consumable product. When a toner cartridge has reached its lifetime, a message will appear in the Printer Status Window. Take measurements according to the message.

Message	Displayed Timing	Contents and Remedies
The toner cartridge may	When lifetime of toner	· Job can be continued.
need to be replaced soon.	cartridge has been reached	 Have a new toner cartridge available.
		· It is recommended that you replace the toner
		cartridge with a new one before printing a large
		amount.

IMPORTANT

If the printout becomes faint or inconsistent, the reason is that the life of the toner cartridge has been reached even when a message does not appear. Do not continue to use the toner cartridge and replace it with new one when there is deterioration in print quality.

Ø NOTE

The cartridge designed for this printer (EP-66 Cartridge) has a life span of up to approximately 10,000 sheets of A4 size paper when loaded in landscape orientation. This is based on printing typical word processing documents that have about 5% page coverage with the print density set to the default setting. The life of your cartridge may vary depending on the type of documents printed. If your average document contains a lot of graphics, tables, or charts, the life of the toner cartridge will be shorter as they consume more toner.

Using Up Toner

If the message appears, perform the following procedure before replacing the toner cartridge. The message may disappear, and you may be able to print for a while until toner runs out completely.

- There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.
- The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic field. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge and consult your physician.

- Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- The fixing unit inside the printer may become hot during use. When replacing fixing unit, do not touch the fixing unit, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.




IMPORTANT

Do not touch the high-voltage contacts inside the toner cover, as this may result in damage to the printer.



1 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



Ø NOTE

If you are using the multi-purpose tray, remove any loaded paper.

2 Open the toner cover.

Press the green toner cover release button as shown in the figure



Holding the green tab, open the toner cover until it clicks (2).



3 Pull out the toner cartridge partially by holding the grip, and then remove the cartridge with both hands as shown in the figure.



4 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure, and gently shake it 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

Be careful not to spill the toner.



- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently; otherwise, the toner may spill out.

5 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure and install it in the printer.

Align the projections on each side of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer. Push the toner cartridge completely into the printer.



Before inserting the toner cartridge, open the toner cover completely. The toner cartridge cannot be inserted when the toner cover is opened only partially.

6 Close the toner cover.

Holding the center of the toner cover, close the cover until it clicks.



- If you cannot close the toner cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the toner cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.
- Do not leave the toner cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

7 Close the multi-purpose tray.



If you cannot close the multi-purpose tray, check if the toner cover is completely closed. If you try to close the multi-purpose tray forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.

If the message does not disappear or the print is too thin even after performing the operation above, replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

Replacing the Toner Cartridge

Perform the following procedure to clean the transport roller and its surroundings, and then replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

- Do not burn or throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.
- There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.
- The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic field. If you use a cardiac
 pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge
 and consult your physician.

• Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.

• The fixing unit inside the printer may become hot during use. When replacing fixing unit, do not touch the fixing unit, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.



- Use only the toner cartridge designed for this printer.
- Do not touch the high-voltage contacts inside the toner cover, as this may result in damage to the printer.



1 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



Ø NOTE

If you are using the multi-purpose tray, remove any loaded paper.

2 Open the toner cover.

Press the green toner cover release button as shown in the figure ①.



Holding the green tab, open the toner cover until it clicks (2).



3 Pull out the toner cartridge partially by holding the grip, and then remove the cartridge with both hands as shown in the figure.



4 Using a slightly dampened cloth with water, wipe off chipped paper and toner that are attached to the transparent sheet, silver transport roller and their surroundings.

After wiping off the dirt, wipe the area with a soft, dry cloth.



WARNING

Clean the printer using a slightly dampened cloth with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- Do not touch the black transfer roller. This may result in deterioration in print quality.
- Be careful not to scratch the transparent sheet or peel it by force.
- Do not use a cleaning agent such as mild detergent.
- Be sure that no water or chipped paper is remaining on the transparent sheet or transport roller.
- Be sure to finish with wiping with a dry cloth. Water remaining inside the printer may result in damage to the printer.
- Do not touch the transport roller. This may result in misfeeds.

5 Take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag.

Use scissors to open the protective bag so as not to damage the toner cartridge.



Keep the protective bag for the toner cartridge. This may be required after taking out the toner cartridge for printer maintenance.

6 Remove the tapes and packing materials attached to the toner cartridge.

Remove the tapes that are securing the packing materials (1).



Remove the packing materials by hooking your fingers into the tabs and pulling them out straight (2).



IMPORTANT

- Do not touch the photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge. Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the drum.
- Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.

7 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure, and gently shake it 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.



- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality. Be sure to carry out this procedure properly.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently; otherwise, the toner may spill out.

8 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface, then remove the tape that is securing the sealing tape.



9 Pull out the sealing tape (approx. 70 cm in length) gently while supporting the toner cartridge.

To pull out the sealing tape, hold the end of it and pull it out straight.





If the sealing tape is pulled out forcefully or stopped at midpoint, toner may spill out. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

• Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally, upwards, or downwards. If the tape is severed, it may become difficult to pull out completely.



- Pull out the sealing tape completely from the toner cartridge. If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.
- When pulling out the sealing tape, be careful not to hold the drum protective shutter with your hands.



• Dispose of the sealing tape according to local regulations.

10 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure and install it in the printer.

Align the projections on each side of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer. Push the toner cartridge completely into the printer.



Before inserting the toner cartridge, open the toner cover completely. The toner cartridge cannot be inserted when the toner cover is opened only partially.

11 Close the toner cover.

Holding the center of the toner cover, close the cover until it clicks.



- If you cannot close the toner cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the toner cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.
- Do not leave the toner cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

12 Close the multi-purpose tray.



IMPORTANT

If you cannot close the multi-purpose tray, check if the toner cover is completely closed. If you try to close the multi-purpose tray forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.

Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges

The toner cartridge consists of delicate parts. Handling the toner cartridge without due care may lead to damage to the toner cartridge or deterioration in print quality. Be careful of the following points when removing or installing the toner cartridge.

- Do not burn or throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.
- The toner cartridge generates a low level magnetic field. If you use a cardiac pacemaker and feel abnormalities, please move away from the toner cartridge and consult your physician.

Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.

IMPORTANT

- Do not expose the toner cartridge to direct sunlight or strong light.
- Keep the toner cartridge away from products that generate magnetic waves, such as a display or computer.

Routine Maintenance

- A toner cartridge is a magnetic product. Keep the toner cartridge away from products that may be damaged by magnetic waves, such as a floppy disk or disk drive. This may lead to damage to data.
- If you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for removing paper jams or servicing the printer, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the photosensitive drum inside the toner cartridge. Be careful not to touch the drum or open the drum protective shutter. Be careful not to hold or touch areas that are not described in this procedure. This may result in damage to the printer.



• When handling the toner cartridge, hold it properly by holding the grip with one hand while holding the cartridge with the other as shown in the figure. Do not set it vertically or upside-down.



- Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the toner cartridge.
- Condensation may form in and on a toner cartridge if it is brought into an environment that exposes it to sudden changes in temperature and/or humidity. If you move the cartridge to a location that is warmer or has higher humidity, keep the toner cartridge in its protective bag and store it in the new location for 2 hours or longer to allow it to adjust to the new temperature.
- Be sure to use a new toner cartridge within the expiration date indicated on the package.
- Using a genuine Canon toner cartridge is recommended.

Storing the Toner Cartridge

Be careful of the following points when storing a new toner cartridge or handling a toner cartridge that has been taken out of the printer for maintenance or moving the printer.

IMPORTANT

- Do not take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag until it is ready to be used.
- If you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for servicing the printer or other purposes, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- Do not place it vertically or upside-down. Store the toner cartridge in the same orientation as when installed in the printer.
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not store a cartridge in a hot or humid place, or a place where the temperature and humidity can change significantly.
 - Storing temperature range: 0 to 35 °C (32 to 95 °F)
 - Storing humidity range: 35 to 85 % RH (no condensation)
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place where corrosive gases, such as ammonia, are generated, or where a considerable amount of salt is contained in the air, or where there is a lot of dust.
- Keep the toner cartridge out of the reach of small children.

Condensation

Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets may develop both inside and outside of the toner cartridge due to the difference in temperature. The development of water droplets is called condensation. Condensation will adversely affect the quality of the toner cartridge.

Cleaning the Fixing Roller 5-21

Cleaning the Fixing Roller

When the front or back of printouts has smudge marks, clean the fixing roller using the following procedure. Print quality deterioration can be prevented by cleaning the fixing roller. First, print out a cleaning page using A4 size paper as shown in the figure. Then, clean the fixing roller by feeding the cleaning page from the multi-purpose tray and delivering it to the output tray.



IMPORTANT

- A cleaning page cannot be printed on other than A4 size paper. Be sure to use A4 size paper.
- If A4 size paper is not loaded in the paper cassette, load it in landscape orientation in the multi-purpose tray.

1 Display the Printer Status Window.

For details on procedures for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.

🔮 Canon LBP36	00	>
lob Options He	lp	
🗐 Rea	dy to Print	*
	<u>Ja</u>	×
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Title	Contents	
Document Na User Name Computer Na	me	
158001		

2 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] \rightarrow [Cleaning 1].

Preferenc	es	
Lieber	Gi Channingt	
Device Se	tions	
Refresh	Printer Status Print Network Status Print Printing Position Adjustment Prin	nt
		2
urrent Print Job	My Job Operation	\$
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	<u></u>
Title Document Name Computer Name	My Job Operation	

3 Click [OK].

Cleaning	1 🛛 🗶
٩	Performs Cleaning 1.
ОК	Cancel

The message, "Now printing a cleaning page." is displayed, and the cleaning page is printed.

Ø NOTE

If A4 size paper is not loaded in any paper source, a message that prompts you to replace paper appears. Load A4 size paper in the multi-purpose tray.

4 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



5 Raise the paper retaining lever.



6 Align the paper guide with A4.



7 Load the cleaning page with the printed side facing down and the arrow mark going into the multi-purpose tray first.



8 Lower the paper retaining lever.



The paper is sent into the printer slowly to start cleaning the fixing roller.

Ø NOTE

- Cleaning takes approximately 2 minutes.
- The cleaning process cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.
- When the front or back of printouts has smudge marks even after performing the procedure above, perform [Cleaning 1] again.

Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum

When the print quality deteriorates, clean the transfer roller and photosensitive drum of the printer using the following procedure. By cleaning them, you can prevent poor print quality.

🕛 IMPORTANT

If the transfer roller and photosensitive drum are cleaned frequently, it may decrease their life span.

1 Display the Printer Status Window.

For details on procedures for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.

Canon LBP36	0	
ob Option <u>s</u> He	lp.	
🗊 Rea	dy to Print	*
		×
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Title	Contents	
Document Na User Name Computer Na	ne	
58001		

2 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] \rightarrow [Cleaning 2].

Options	Help		
Prefe	rences		
Utility		K	-
Devio	e Settings	Cleaning2	-(-
Refre	sh	Network Status Print Printing Position Adjustment Print	
-	-02		
		<u> </u>	¢
irrent Print	Job My Job	Operation]	
rrent Print Title	Job My Job	Operation	[
rrent Print Title Documen	Job My Job	Operation	[_ II
rrent Print Title Documen User Narr Computer	Job My Job (UName re Name	Operation Contents	[[]

3 Click [OK].

Cleaning 2	×
i	Performs Cleaning 2.
ОК	Cancel

The message "Cleaning" is displayed in the Printer Status Window, and cleaning of the transfer roller and photosensitive starts.

NOTE

- Cleaning takes approximately 15 seconds.
- The cleaning process cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.

Adjusting the Printing Position

If the printing position is skewed when printing from a certain paper source, you can adjust the position from the Printer Status Window.

🕛 IMPORTANT

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the printout.

Ø NOTE

Be aware when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, since the orientation of the images on the reverse pages in 2-sided printing varies depending on the printing orientation or setting for [Binding Location] in the [Finishing] sheet.

Checking the Printing Position

Perform the printing position adjustment print and check the position to be adjusted.

1 Display the Printer Status Window.

For details on procedures for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.

🗳 Canon LBP3600		
Job Options Help		
Ready to F	Print	*
	2	*
Current Print Job My	Job Operation	<u></u>
]		_
Title	Contents	
Document Name		
Computer Name		
Computer Indine		
		1
U5B001		

2 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Printing Position Adjustment Print].



The [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box is displayed.

3 In the [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box, select the paper source of which you want to check the printing position.

Place a checkmark for [Check Duplex Unit Also] when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing.

Paper Source)	
C Multi-purpos	e Tray		
Cassette 1			
C Cassette 2			
C Cassette 3			
C Cassette 4			

4 Click [OK].

			2	
ape	r Source			
C	Multi-purpose T	ray		
•	Cassette 1			
C	Cassette 2			
C	Cassette 3			
С	Cassette 4			

The printing position adjustment print is printed as shown below. The arrow points the top edge of the printing position adjustment print.

	\square

Next, check the printout results and specify the position to be adjusted in "Adjusting the Printing Position" (See p. 5-30).

Adjusting the Printing Position

The measurements of " \boxplus " printed on paper are as below:



*5 mm from each edge of paper (10 mm for envelopes)

As an example, the setting procedure after printing the following printing position adjustment print by selecting [Cassette 1] for [Paper Source] in the [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box is described here. In this case, adjust the printing position -5.0 mm to the left.



NOTE

The printing position can be adjusted within a range from +5.0 to -5.0 mm (in the horizontal direction only).

1 Display the Printer Status Window.

For details on procedures for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window," on p. 4-79.

🗳 Canon LBP360	0	
Job Options Hel	p	
🟐 Read	y to Print	*
		A X
		٩
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Title	Contents	
Document Nar User Name Computer Narr	ne	
JSB001		

2 Select [Device Settings] from the [Options] menu.

Ontione H	alp	
Droforon		
Preieren		
·		
Device Se	attings	
Refresh		
-	Les .	
urrent Print Jo	>] My Job Operation]	Ś
urrent Print Jo	My Job Operation	<u> </u>
Title	My Job Operation Contents	
Title Document N User Name	My Job Operation Contents	
Title Document N User Name Computer Na	My Job Operation Contents me	
Title Document N. User Name Computer Na	My Job Operation Contents	

The [Device Settings] dialog box is displayed.

3 Adjust the printing position in [Print Position Adjustment] in the [Device Settings] dialog box.

Next, check the printout results of the printing position adjustment print and select the numerical value to adjust the position. The printing position can be adjusted within a range from -5.0 to 5.0 mm. The position is moved by the entered value. Negative values move the position to the left and positive values to the right.

evice Settings	?>
2-sided Special Mode	
🔲 Graphics Special Mode	
🔲 Lighten Flicker Mode	
Print Position Adjustment	
<u>M</u> ulti-purpose Tray	0.0 mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
<u>C</u> assette 1	5.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
C <u>a</u> ssette 2	0.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Cass <u>e</u> tte 3	0.0 mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Casse <u>i</u> te 4	0.0 mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Duplex Unit	0.0 mm [-5.0 to 5.0]

NOTE

The printing position can be adjusted in 0.5 mm increments.

4 Click [OK].

evice Settings	?
2-sided Special Mode	
Graphics Special Mod	e
Lighten Flicker Mode	
Print Position Adjustment	
<u>M</u> ulti-purpose Tray	0.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
<u>C</u> assette 1	5.0 to 5.0]
C <u>a</u> ssette 2	0.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Cass <u>e</u> tte 3	0.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Cassette 4	0.0 + mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
Duplex Unit	0.0 mm [-5.0 to 5.0]
0	K Cancel <u>H</u> elp

5 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Printing Position Adjustment Print].

-		
		-
•	Cleaning1	3
ngs	Cleaning2	
	Printer Status Print	-
	Printing Position Adjustment Print	
9		
		<u></u>
		Q.
My Job Opera	ation	
		_
	1	
Lonten	2 tr	
1 CONTON		
e		
e		
e		_
	My Job Opera	Cleaning1 Cleaning2 Printer Status Print Printing Position Adjustment Print

The [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box is displayed.

6 In the [Printing Position Adjustment Print] dialog box, select the paper source of which you checked the printing position.

Select the p When adjus adjust it in th	aper source t ting the printi ne [Device Se	o check and c ng position afte sttings] dialog i	lick (OK). er printing, n the (Optio	n) menu.
Paper Sou	irce	,		
Cass	ette 1			
C Cass	ette 3 ette 4			
Check D	uplex Unit Al	\$0		

7 Click [OK].

	cint die [Device 5	ettings) tilalog in tr	ie (opuori) meric
Pape	r Source		
с	Multi-purpose Tra	iy	
¢	Cassette 1		
C	Cassette 2		
\mathbf{C}	Cassette 3		
С	Cassette 4		

The printing position adjustment print in which the setting is changed is printed. Check the printout results to confirm the printing position. To make further adjustment, repeat step 1 to 7.

Cleaning the Printer

Periodically clean the outer surfaces and ventilation slots of the printer to keep the print quality high. When cleaning the printer, be careful of the following points in order to prevent an electrical shock or printer malfunctions.

- When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the main power switch, then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. Check detergent for flammability prior to use. If flammable substances come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

- Be careful not to use a cleaning agent other than water or a mild detergent diluted with water, as this may deform or crack the plastic materials in the printer.
- When using a mild detergent, be sure to dilute it with water.
- Grease or oil does not have to be applied to this printer. Be sure not to apply grease or oil.
- Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



2 Firmly wring a soft cloth dampened with water or a mild detergent diluted with water, and wipe off the dirt.

If you use a mild detergent for cleaning, be sure to wipe away the detergent with a soft cloth dampened with water.



- **3** After wiping off the dirt, wipe the printer with a dry cloth.
- **4** When the printer is completely dry, plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

Moving the Printer 5-37

Moving the Printer

When changing the location of the printer or moving the printer for maintenance, be sure to perform the following procedure.



Be sure that the power is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables are disconnected from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

- This printer weighs approximately 20.4 kg (Main unit: Approx. 18.4 kg/Toner cartridge: Approx. 2 kg) without the paper cassette attached. The printer must be carried by two or more people, and care must be taken to avoid hurting your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.
- Be sure not to hold the top cover, multi-purpose tray, or any portions other than the grips for moving the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injuries.



• The back portion of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to get off-balanced when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injuries.



- Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injuries.
- Do not carry the printer with the paper feeders installed. If you do so, the paper feeders may drop resulting in personal injuries.





MPORTANT

• Make sure that the top cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.

• Do not touch the connector on the back of the printer, as this may result in printer error.



• When carrying the printer, do not touch the top rear cover on the back of the printer. If the top rear cover is not set properly, an error message such as "Duplex Unit is not attached correctly" or "Toner Cover Open" appears in the Printer Status Window.


• How To Set the Top Rear Cover

If the top rear cover comes off or is not set properly, take the cover out once using the following procedure, and then set it again, properly.

1. While pressing the top rear cover from both sides ① and pressing the tabs on the top rear cover ②, remove the top rear cover ③.



2. Set the top rear cover.

Fit up the upper left portion of the top rear cover ①, then insert the projection on the upper right into the hole ②.



While pressing the tabs on the back of the top rear cover (3), insert the tabs into the holes (4) to set the top rear cover.



The top rear cover is set, snapping. Make sure that the tabs are inserted completely into the holes.





IMPORTANT

Be sure that the film of the top rear cover does not get creased when installing the top rear cover.





For details on the installation site, see "Getting Started Guide".

1 Press "○" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

Ø NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

3 Pull out the paper cassette.

If it is difficult to pull out the paper cassette, lift it slightly, and then pull it out horizontally.



4 Move the printer from the installation site.

Carry the printer with 2 or more people by holding the grips on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.



Ø NOTE

5

If the optional paper feeders were previously installed in the printer, place the paper feeders on the new installation site before carrying the printer to the site. For details on the procedure for installing the paper feeders, see "Installing the Paper Feeders," on p. 6-20.

Set the printer down carefully at the new installation site.

Set the printer down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.

🕛 IMPORTANT

Be sure that a space for installing optional accessories and connecting cables is secured at the installation site.

6 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Set the paper cassette referring to the figure below:

• If the paper cassette is not extended, push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



• If the paper cassette is extended, the front side of the cassette is not flush with the front surface of the printer. Push the paper cassette gently until it stops.





If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

7 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

8 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

• Transporting the Printer

When transporting the printer for reasons such as relocating, remove the toner cartridge and store the printer and the parts in the package that they came in with the protective materials attached in order to prevent them from being damaged while being transported.

If the original package and packing materials are not available, find an appropriate box and packing materials and pack the printer and the parts appropriately.

Handling the Printer 5-45

Handling the Printer

This printer consists of various electronic and precise optical parts. Read the following section so that you can handle the printer properly.

IMPORTANT

The procedures for handling the printer are also described in "Important Safety Instructions" (See p. xii).

Precautions for Handling the Printer

Observe the following precautions so that high-quality printing can be maintained constantly.

IMPORTANT

• Do not place any heavy objects on the printer, trays, or covers. It may result in damage to the printer.



• Do not leave any cover open longer than required. Exposing the printer to direct sunlight or strong light may result in deterioration in print quality.

• Avoid vibration while the printer is printing. It may result in deterioration in print quality.



- Do not open the top cover during printing. It may result in damage to the printer.
- Handle the top cover, multi-purpose tray, and other covers gently when opening or closing them. Otherwise, it may result in damage to the printer.
- If you want to spread a blanket on the printer to prevent dust from entering the printer, turn the power OFF and allow the printer to cool down sufficiently before covering the printer.
- If you do not plan to use the printer for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the AC power outlet.
- Do not use or store the printer in a room where chemicals are used.

Precaution for Storing the Printer

If you do not plan to use the printer for a long period of time, store it in the following environment:

- Storage temperature range: 0 to 35 °C (32 to 95 °F)
- Storage humidity range: 10 to 80% RH with no condensation

Optional Accessories



This chapter describes the optional accessories and the procedures for installing them on the printer.

Optional Accessories	3-2 5-2 5-3 5-4 6-5
Paper Feeder	3-6
Installation Space .6 Parts and Their Functions .6 Removing the Packing Materials .6 Moving the Printer .6- Installing the Paper Feeders .6- Removing the Paper Feeders .6- Removing the Paper Feeders .6-	5-8 5-9 5-9 -15 -20 -25
Duplex Unit 6-2 Installation Space 6-2 Parts and Their Functions 6-2 Removing the Packing Materials 6-2 Installing the Duplex Unit 6-2 Removing the Duplex Unit 6-2 Removing the Duplex Unit 6-3	28 ·29 ·30 ·30 ·32 ·34
Network Board	38
Parts and Their Functions .6 Installing the Network Board .6 Setting the Network Board .6 Resetting the Network Board .6 Removing the Network Board .6 Removing the Network Board .6	-40 -41 -45 -48 -51

Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are available in order to use this printer to its full extent. Purchase them to fulfill your needs. For the optional accessories, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Paper Cassette

The optional paper cassettes are used by being replaced with the paper cassettes supplied with the printer or optional paper feeders.

The optional 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66A is used by being replaced with the standard cassette of the printer.

The optional 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66B is used by being replaced with the paper cassette of an optional paper feeder.

Up to approximately 250 sheets of paper (64 g/m²) at sizes of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive can be loaded in a paper cassette.



🧷 NOTE

A release date for the universal cassette designed for custom paper sizes has not yet been set.

Paper Feeder

This printer is supplied with 2 paper sources: the paper cassette and multi-purpose tray. By installing the optional paper feeders, up to 5 paper sources can be used.

The 250-sheet paper feeder unit PF-66 has a mid-transport area and consists of a 250-sheet paper feeder and 250-sheet paper cassette.

The 250-sheet paper feeder unit PF-66E consists of a 250-sheet paper feeder and 250-sheet paper cassette.

Up to approximately 250 sheets of paper (64 g/m²) at sizes of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive can be loaded in the 250-sheet paper cassette.



NOTE

• Up to 3 paper feeders can be installed as shown in the figure:



- The paper feeder is designed for LBP3800/3700/3600. Paper feeders designed for other printers cannot be used.
- For details on the procedure for installing the paper feeder, see "Paper Feeder," on p. 6-6.

Duplex Unit

The duplex unit DU-66 is a unit that enables automatic 2-sided printing. The duplex unit is to be installed on the back of the main unit. You can perform automatic 2-sided printing on standard paper sizes (A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter and Executive).



IMPORTANT

You cannot perform automatic 2-sided printing on heavy paper (91 - 128 g/m²), transparencies, labels, envelopes, and custom paper sizes.

🤌 NOTE

- The duplex unit is designed for LBP3800/3700/3600. Duplex units designed for other printers cannot be used.
- For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Duplex Unit," on p. 6-28.

Network Board

The network board fits inside the printer and is compatible with the TCP/IP protocol for connecting the printer to LAN. The network board enables the operation of the printer using a Web Browser "Remote UI" allowing you to specify settings and manage the printer from a computer on the network.



Ø NOTE

- For details on "Remote UI", see "Remote UI Guide".
- For details on the procedure for installing the network board, see "Network Board," on p. 6-38.

Paper Feeder

The paper feeders are to be installed at the bottom of the main unit.

Make sure that all the following items are contained in the package before installing the paper feeder. If any item is missing or damaged, please contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



Be sure that the power of the printer is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before installing the paper feeders. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.



IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connector or paper feed roller in the paper feeder. It may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.





Ø NOTE

• Up to 3 paper feeders can be installed as shown in the figure:



• For more details on the procedure for installing the paper feeder, see "Loading Paper in Cassette 2, 3, or 4," on p. 2-27.

6

Installation Space

Dimensions of each part, foot positions, and the space required for using the printer with the paper feeder installed are indicated in the following figure:



Parts and Their Functions



(1) Transport Guide

Opened when removing jammed paper. (See p. 7-21)

② Paper Cassette

Up to 250 sheets of paper (64 g/m²) at sizes of A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, and Executive can be loaded. (See p. 2-17)

Removing the Packing Materials

The paper feeders are provided with tapes and packing material to be protected from excessive vibrations and shocks during delivery. Remove the tapes and packing material before installing the paper feeders on the printer.

IMPORTANT

- If there is any packing material remaining inside the paper feeder, this may result in misfeeds or damage to the printer when operating the printer. Be sure to follow the procedure to remove all the packing materials.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for reasons such as relocating or servicing. Keep them where they will not get lost.

Removing the Packing Materials from the 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66

1 Remove the tapes securing the paper feeder (3 locations) and remove the packing material.

Remove the packing material by removing the tape that is securing it ① and pulling it out vertically ②.



2 Pull out the paper cassette gently until it stops ①, then lift up the front portion of the cassette to remove it ②.







The paper cassette cannot be pulled out horizontally. If you try to pull it out forcefully, this may result in damage to the paper cassette.

3 Remove the packing material by removing the tape ① and pulling out the tab vertically ② as shown in the figure.



4 Remove the tapes and packing material in the paper cassette.

Remove the 2 tapes (1).



While pressing down the plate in the paper cassette as shown in the figure (2), remove the packing material (3).



- The paper cassette is provided with the packing materials. Be sure to pull out the paper cassette to remove all the packing materials.
- Do not touch the black rubber pad in the paper cassette. If you touch it, this may result in misfeeds.



Removing the Packing Materials from the 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66E

1 Remove the tapes securing the paper feeder (1 location).



2 Pull out the paper cassette gently until it stops ①, then lift up the front portion of the cassette to remove it ②.





The paper cassette cannot be pulled out horizontally. If you try to pull it out forcefully, this may result in damage to the paper cassette.

3 Remove the packing material by removing the tape ① and pulling out the tab vertically ② as shown in the figure.



4 Remove the tapes and packing material in the paper cassette.



Remove the 2 tapes ①.

While pressing down the plate in the paper cassette as shown in the figure (2), remove the packing material (3).



- The paper cassette is provided with the packing materials. Be sure to pull out the paper cassette to remove all the packing materials.
- Do not touch the black rubber pad in the paper cassette. If you touch it, this may result in misfeeds.



Moving the Printer

When installing the paper feeders in the printer after installing the printer, move the printer to an appropriate location temporarily using the following procedure.

Be sure that the power is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables are disconnected from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.



Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injuries.

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

3 Pull out the paper cassette.

If it is difficult to pull out the paper cassette, lift it slightly, and then pull it out horizontally.



4 Move the printer from the installation site.

Carry the printer with 2 or more people by holding the grips on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.





- This printer weighs approximately 20.4 kg (Main Unit: Approx. 18.4 kg/ Toner Cartridge: Approx. 2 kg) without the paper cassette attached. The printer must be carried by 2 or more people, and care must be taken to avoid hurting your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.
- Be sure not to hold the top cover, multi-purpose tray, or any portions other than the grips for moving the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injuries.



• The back portion of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to get off-balanced when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injuries.



- Make sure that the top cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.
- Do not touch the connector on the back of the printer, as this may result in printer error.



• When carrying the printer, do not touch the top rear cover on the back of the printer. If the top rear cover is not set properly, an error message such as "Duplex Unit is not attached correctly" or "Toner Cover Open" appears in the Printer Status Window.



• How To Set the Top Rear Cover

If the top rear cover comes off or is not set properly, take the cover out once using the following procedure, and then set it again, properly.

1. While pressing the top rear cover from both sides ① and pressing the tabs on the top rear cover ②, remove the top rear cover ③.



2. Set the top rear cover.

Fit up the upper left portion of the top rear cover ①, then insert the projection on the upper right into the hole ②.



While pressing the tabs on the back of the top rear cover (3), insert the tabs into the holes (4) to set the top rear cover.



The top rear cover is set, snapping. Make sure that the tabs are inserted completely into the holes.





IMPORTANT

Be sure that the film of the top rear cover does not get creased when installing the top rear cover.



Installing the Paper Feeders

The paper feeders are to be installed at the bottom of the main unit.

- - Set the printer or paper feeders down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.
 - Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injuries.
 - Do not carry the printer with the paper feeders installed. If you do so, the paper feeders may drop resulting in personal injuries.



🕛 important

When the paper feeders are installed, be sure that the paper cassettes above the feeding paper feeder (Cassette 2, 3, or 4) are set before using it. If those paper cassettes are not set, paper cannot be fed from the lower paper source. (For example, if Cassette 2 is not set, paper cannot be fed from Cassette 3.)

1 Pull out paper cassettes from all the paper feeders.

Pull out the paper cassette gently until it stops ①, then lift up the front portion of the cassette to remove it ②.





The paper cassette cannot be pulled out horizontally. If you try to pull it out forcefully, this may result in damage to the paper cassette.

2 Place the paper feeders at the installation site.

When carrying a paper feeder, hold the grips on both sides with both hands as shown in the figure.



• Do not touch the connector or paper feed roller in the paper feeder. It may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.





- Do not install the paper feeders on a platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or where the printer is liable to sink (such as on a carpet or mat).
- Secure enough space around the paper feeders so that you can install the printer and connect cords such as the power cord and interface cables.

3 When installing a paper feeder on another paper feeder, match the positioning pins and connector and gently set it down.





Up to 3 paper feeders can be installed as shown in the figure:



4 When installing the main unit on the paper feeders, match the positioning pins and connector and gently set it down.



5 Hook the cassette protective cover to the projections on the back of the paper feeder ①, keeping it at angle, and then set it down gently ②.

Attach the cassette protective cover securely until it snaps.



Do not put hands, press hard, or place objects on the cassette protective cover. It may damage to the cassette protective cover.

Ø NOTE

The cassette protective cover can be attached to the back of any of the paper feeders. Attach it to the appropriate position.

6 Set the paper cassettes in the main unit and paper feeders.

Ø NOTE

If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

7 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

🧷 NOTE

After installing the paper feeders, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking the [Get Device Status] button in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet.

Removing the Paper Feeders

Remove the paper feeders using the following procedure.

Be sure that the power of the printer is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before removing the paper feeders. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

• Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injuries.

• Do not carry the printer with the paper feeders installed. If you do so, the paper feeders may drop resulting in personal injuries.



IMPORTANT

When moving or servicing the printer, remove the paper feeders and paper cassettes.

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

- **3** Pull out paper cassettes from the main unit and all the paper feeders.
- **4** Lift up the printer and remove it from the paper feeders.
- **5** If 2 or more paper feeders are installed, remove them from the top.
- **6** Move the paper feeders.
- 7 Move back the main unit to the installation site.
- 8

Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Ø NOTE

If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

9 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

10 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.



The duplex unit is to be installed on the back of the main unit.

Confirm the contents of the package before installing the duplex unit. If any item is damaged, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.





Be sure that the power switch of the printer is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before installing the duplex unit. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

Installation Space

Dimensions of each part and the space required for using the printer with the duplex unit installed is indicated in the figure below:


Parts and Their Functions



1 Duplex Unit Top Cover

Opened when removing jammed paper. (See p. 7-24)

② Lock Release Lever

Used when installing or removing the duplex unit.

Removing the Packing Materials

The duplex unit is provided with tapes and packing material to be protected from excessive vibrations and shocks during delivery. Remove the tapes and packing material before installing the duplex unit on the printer.

③ Duplex Unit Rear Cover

paper. (See p. 7-24)

Opened when removing the duplex unit or jammed

- If there is any packing material remaining inside the duplex unit, this may result in misfeeds or damage to the printer when operating the printer. Be sure to follow the procedure to remove all the packing materials.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for reasons such as relocating or servicing. Keep them where they will not get lost.

1 Remove the tapes that are securing the duplex unit.



2 Open the duplex unit top cover ①, then remove the protective sheet inside the duplex unit ②.



Installing the Duplex Unit

The duplex unit is to be installed on the back of the main unit.

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

3 Remove the top rear cover of the printer.

As shown in the figure, while pressing the top rear cover from both sides (1) and pressing the tabs on the top rear cover (2), remove the top rear cover (3).



MPORTANT

Keep the top rear cover. It is required after the duplex unit is removed.

4 Remove the bottom rear cover of the printer.



Keep the bottom rear cover. It is required after the duplex unit is removed.

5 Install the duplex unit by matching the positioning pins on the holes on the back of the printer.

Push the duplex unit firmly until it clicks.





Install the duplex unit gently and carefully to avoid catching your hand between the printer and duplex unit, as this may result in personal injuries.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the duplex unit connector, as this may result in damage to the printer or printer error.



6 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

NOTE

After installing the duplex unit, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking the [Get Device Status] button in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet.

Removing the Duplex Unit

Remove the duplex unit using the following procedure. Have ready the top rear cover and bottom rear cover removed from the printer when the duplex unit was installed.

Be sure that the power switch of the printer is turned OFF, the power cord is unplugged, and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before removing the duplex unit. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

When moving or servicing the printer, remove the duplex unit.

- **1** Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
- **2** Remove all interface cables and the power cord.
- **3** Open the duplex unit rear cover.
- **4** Push up the lock release levers on each side of the duplex unit, then remove the duplex unit.
- **5** Close the duplex unit rear cover.

6 Set the top rear cover.

Fit up the upper left portion of the top rear cover ①, then insert the projection on the upper right into the hole ②.



While pressing the tabs on the back of the top rear cover (3), insert the tabs into the holes (4) to set the top rear cover.



The top rear cover is set, snapping. Make sure that the tabs are inserted completely into the holes.



• Be sure that the film of the top rear cover does not get creased when installing the top rear cover.



- Set the top rear cover properly. If the top rear cover is not set properly, an error message such as "Duplex Unit is not attached correctly" or "Toner Cover Open" appears in the Printer Status Window.
- **7** Set the bottom rear cover of the printer.
- **8** Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.
- **9** Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

Network Board

The network board is to be installed into the expansion slot on the back of the printer.



By installing the optional network board, you can use LBP3600 directly connected to a network.





- Be sure that the power of the printer is turned OFF and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before installing the network board. Replacing with the power ON or the cables and power cord connected may result in an electrical shock.
- Be careful when handling the network board. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of the network board may result in personal injuries.

IMPORTANT

Parts that are sensitive to static electricity are used on the network board. Observe the following precautions when handling the network board to prevent damage from static electricity.

- Touch a metal object to dissipate static electricity before handling the network board.
- When handling the network board, do not touch anything that generates static electricity such as the computer display.
- Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- To prevent the network board being affected by static electricity, keep it in the protective bag until it is ready to be installed. The protective bag is required after the network board is removed. So, keep the bag.

6



This network board does not come with a LAN cable. A Category 5 twisted pair cable is required for installing the network board and connecting the printer to a network. Have a cable or hub available as needed.

Parts and Their Functions



(1) Printer Connector

Connects to the printer. Do not touch the connector directly with your hands.

② LAN Connector

Connects to the 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX LAN cable.

③ 100 Indicator (Green)

Illuminates when the network board is connected to the network with 100BASE-TX. Does not illuminate when connected with 10BASE-T.

④ LNK Indicator (Green)

Illuminates when the network board is connected to the network properly.

(5) ERR Indicator (Orange)

Illuminates or blinks when the network board is not working properly.

⑥ MAC Address

It is required when specifying the IP address using the ARP/PING command. It may be also required when installing the printer driver.

Installing the Network Board

Install the network board on the expansion slot of the printer using the following procedure. A Phillips screwdriver is required for installing the network board. Have one that matches the size of the screws available.

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

If there is not enough space to install the network board, move the printer so that you can work easier.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

3 Remove the screw and protective plate for the expansion slot.



IMPORTANT

The removed protective plate and screw are required when the network board is removed. Keep them where they will not get lost.

4 Insert the network board into the expansion slot.

Hold the metal panel portions of the network board and insert the board while aligning it with the guide rail inside the expansion slot.



- Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- Insert the printer connector of the network board securely into the connector inside the expansion slot.

5 Secure the top and bottom portions of the network board with the 2 screws supplied with the network board.



6 Connect the LAN cable.

Connect a LAN cable that is compatible with the LAN connector of the network board according to the network.



NOTE

- This network board does not come with a LAN cable. A Category 5 twisted pair cable is required for installing the network board and connecting the printer to a network. Have a cable or hub available as needed.
- If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

6

- **7** Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.
- **8** Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- **9** Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



If the printer does not operate properly, or an error message appears in the Printer Status Window, see "Troubleshooting," on p. 7-1.

10 Make sure that the LNK indicator (green) on the network board is on.

If the network board is connected with 10BASE-T, the board is working properly when the LNK indicator is on.

If the network board is connected with 100BASE-TX, the board is working properly when the LNK indicator and 100 indicator are on.



If the network board is not working properly, turn the power of the printer OFF, and then check the LAN cable connection, hub performance, and network board installation.

Setting the Network Board

The default value of the network board is set at "Auto detect". Usually, you do not need to change the setting, since the transmission speed and transfer mode of 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX are detected automatically. If the printer cannot communicate with other machines on the network, set the DIP switches on the network board. Before setting the DIP switches, turn the power of the printer OFF and remove the network board. A Phillips screwdriver is required for removing the network board. Have one that matches the size of the screws available. Set the DIP switches according to the transmission speed of the connected network as follows.



IMPORTANT

When setting the DIP switches, be careful not to damage the main board with the tip of a ball-point pen etc. Do not use a sharp object such as a mechanical pencil.



Setting the Network Transmission Speed/Transfer Mode and the DIP Switches

Communication speed and Transmission mode of LAN	DIP switch setting
Auto detect (default setting)	
3,	
TUDASE-T/Hall-duplex	
TOBASE-T/Full-duplex	
100BASE-1X/Haif-duplex	
TUUDASE-TX/Full-duplex	

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

Ø NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

3 Remove the 2 screws and remove the network board.

Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.

4 Set the DIP switches.

Set the DIP switches with the tip of a ball-point pen etc. For details on the setting procedure, see the table on p. 6-46.



6

5 Insert the network board into the expansion slot.

Hold the metal panel portions of the network board and insert the board while aligning it with the guide rail inside the expansion slot.

- Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- Insert the printer connector of the network board securely into the connector inside the expansion slot.

6 Secure the top and bottom portions of the network board with the 2 screws supplied with the network board.

7 Connect the LAN cable.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

8 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

9 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

Resetting the Network Board

If you want to reset the network board to the default values, use Remote UI or FTP client. For details on Remote UI, see "Chapter 3 Various Functions of Remote UI" in Remote UI Guide, and on FTP client, see "Chapter 5 Appendix" in Network Guide.

Even if none of the above procedures work, you can reset the settings for the network board by manipulating the DIP switches using the following procedure. A Phillips screwdriver is required to reset the settings for the network board. Have one that matches the size of the screws available.

Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

Remove the 2 screws and remove the network board.

Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.

4 Switch the DIP switch 1 to ON.

Set the DIP switches with the tip of a ball-point pen etc.



When setting the DIP switches, be careful not to damage the main board with the tip of a ball-point pen etc. Do not use a sharp object such as a mechanical pencil.

5 Insert the network board into the expansion slot.

Hold the metal panel portions of the network board and insert the board while aligning it with the guide rail inside the expansion slot.

- Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- Insert the printer connector of the network board securely into the connector inside the expansion slot.

- **6** Secure the top and bottom portions of the network board with the 2 screws supplied with the network board.
- **7** Connect the power cord.
- 8 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- 9 Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON, wait until the Ready indicator illuminates, and then press "○" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF.
- **10** Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
- **11** Remove the power cord.
- 12 Remove the network board, then reset the DIP switch 1 to OFF.

Set the DIP switches with the tip of a ball-point pen etc.



IMPORTANT

When setting the DIP switches, be careful not to damage the main board with the tip of a ball-point pen etc. Do not use a sharp object such as a mechanical pencil.

13 Install the network board.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

14 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

15 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

Removing the Network Board

Remove the network board using the following procedure. Have ready the protective plate and screw for the expansion slot removed when the network board was installed.



- · Be sure that the power of the printer is turned OFF and all interface cables and power cord are disconnected from the printer before removing the network board. Replacing with the power ON or the cables and power cord connected may result in an electrical shock.
- Be careful when handling the network board. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of the network board may result in personal injuries.
- 1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

NOTE

If the optional duplex unit is installed, remove it from the printer. For details on removing the duplex unit, see "Removing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-34.

Remove the 2 screws and remove the network board.

Store the network board in the protective bag that it came in.

- Do not touch the network board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- The removed 2 screws are required when the network board is installed. Keep them where they will not get lost.

4 Attach the protective plate to the expansion slot and secure it with the screw.

Ø NOTE

If the optional duplex unit was previously installed, reinstall it on the printer. For details on the procedure for installing the duplex unit, see "Installing the Duplex Unit," on p. 6-32.

5 Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.

6 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

Troubleshooting

CHAPTER

This chapter describes the remedies for problems such as a paper jam or poor print quality.

Troubleshooting Map	.7-2
Alarm Indicator	.7-3
Paper Jams	. 7-4 .7-6
Service Call Display	7-39
Print Quality Problems	7-41
Paper Problems	7-47
When Nothing is Printed	7-49
nstallation Problems	7 -50 7-51 7-53 7-56 7-57
Miscellaneous Problems	7-58
Confirming the Printer Features	7-60

Troubleshooting Map

If any problem occurs while you are using the printer, follow the flow chart shown below to check the problem.



Troubleshooting





When a problem has occurred in the printer, the Alarm indicator (red) illuminates or



When the Alarm indicator is on, a service error is occurring. In this case, see "Service Call Display," on p. 7-39.

When the Alarm indicator is blinking, take measurements according to the direction of the Printer Status Window.

Canon LBP3600	
o Option <u>s</u> <u>H</u> elp	
🖞 Paper Jar	n inside Printer 🖉
5	Check the following locations and remove jammed paper: -Torner catindge -Cassettes of the main unit See the instruction manual for more information.
Current Print Job My	Job Operation
	0 Pages Printed.
Title	Contents
Document Name	test
User Name	Johnson
C	2K-ENG
Lomputer Name	

Paper Jams

The messages shown below appears in the Printer Status Window when a paper jam occurs during printing.

Paper Jar	n inside Printer
	Check the following locations and remove jammed paper: -1 oner cathidge -Cassettes of the main unit See the instruction manual for more information.
urrent Print Job My	Job Operation
urrent Print Job My	Job Operation
urrent Print Job My	Job Operation 0 Pages Pinted.
urrent Print Job My Title Document Name	Job Operation] 0 Pages Printed. Contents
Irrent Print Job My Title Document Name User Name	Job Operation 0 Pages Printed. Contents test Johnson

There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.



• The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer may become hot during use. Do not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.



- When removing jammed paper, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing a used toner cartridge from the toner cartridge slot, remove the cartridge carefully to prevent the toner from scattering and entering your eyes or mouth. If the toner enters your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.
- When removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

• Do not touch the high-voltage contacts inside the toner cover, as this may result in damage to the printer.



• Before removing jammed paper, be sure to remove the toner cartridge and paper cassette, and open the top cover of the printer completely until it stops.

- Remove jammed paper while the power of the printer is turned ON. If the power is turned OFF, the data being printed will be deleted. In case you remove jammed paper when the duplex unit is installed in the printer, the data being printed will be deleted because you have to turn the power of the printer OFF.
- Applying excess force may result in tearing paper or damaging the parts in the printer. When removing jammed paper, pull out the paper in the most appropriate direction, judging from the position of the paper.
- If paper is torn, be sure to find and remove any remaining pieces of paper.
- The error message may remain if jammed paper is removed without opening the top cover. In this case, open and close the top cover.

Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams

Follow the instructions below to remove the jammed paper:



1 Open the top cover.

Raise the top cover slowly and firmly, and open it completely until it stops. If any jammed paper is removed when the top cover is not opened completely, it may result in damage to the printer.

2 Pull out the paper cassette.

If it is difficult to pull out the paper cassette, lift it slightly, and then pull it out horizontally.



3 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



4 If you are using the multi-purpose tray, raise the paper retaining lever, and then remove any loaded paper.



5 Remove any paper jammed in the multi-purpose tray.





If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, proceed to the next step. Do not try to remove it forcefully.

6 Lower the paper retaining lever.



7 Open the toner cover.

Press the green toner cover release button as shown in the figure ①.



Holding the green tab, open the toner cover until it clicks (2).



8 Pull out the toner cartridge partially by holding the grip, and then remove the cartridge with both hands as shown in the figure.







10 Turn the dial in the toner cover in the direction of the arrow to send any jammed paper.



11 Remove any paper jammed in the toner cover.

Remove the jammed paper gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling.



If you pull the jammed paper obliquely downward, unfixed toner may spill. When removing the jammed paper, pull it as obliquely upward as possible. Dirt inside the printer may cause deterioration in print quality.



12 Remove any paper jammed in the output tray.

Remove the jammed paper gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling.





When rear edge of the paper remains in the fixing unit, unfixed toner is on the paper. Be careful not to spill the toner when removing the paper. Toner that spilled inside the printer may stain the inside, causing deterioration in print quality.

13 If the jammed paper is under the delivery guide inner cover, open the cover.

Holding the green tab, raise the delivery guide inner cover.



14 Remove any jammed paper, then close the delivery guide inner cover.

Remove the jammed paper gently.



IMPORTANT

When top edge of the paper has been sent into the fixing unit, unfixed toner is on the paper. Be careful not to spill the toner when removing the paper. Toner that spilled inside the printer may stain the inside, causing deterioration in print quality.
15 Close the toner cover.

Holding the center of the toner cover, close the cover until it clicks.



16 Close the multi-purpose tray.





If you cannot close the multi-purpose tray, check if the toner cover is completely closed. If you try to close the multi-purpose tray forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.

17 Remove any paper jammed at the bottom of the printer.



If a paper jam occurs when feeding paper from an optional paper feeder, see "Paper Jam in the Paper Feeders," on p. 7-21.

18 Set the paper cassette in the printer.



If a paper jam occurs when performing 2-sided printing with the optional duplex unit, see "Paper Jam in the Duplex Unit," on p. 7-24.

19 Remove any jammed paper from the output tray.



IMPORTANT

Before removing the jammed paper, make sure that the top cover is opened completely until it stops. If any jammed paper is removed when the top cover is not opened completely, it may result in damage to the printer.

20 If the jammed paper is under the inner guide, raise the inner guide ①, then remove the jammed paper ②.

Raise the inner guide by holding the tab. Pull out the jammed paper gently.



21 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



22 Open the toner cover.

Press the green toner cover release button as shown in the figure ①.



Holding the green tab, open the toner cover until it clicks 2.



23 Take the toner cartridge out of the protective bag, then install it in the printer.

Align the projections on each side of the toner cartridge with the toner cartridge guides inside the printer. Push the toner cartridge completely into the printer.



24 Close the toner cover.

Holding the center of the toner cover, close the cover until it clicks.



- If you cannot close the toner cover, check if the toner cartridge is set properly. If you close the toner cover forcefully, this may cause damage to the printer.
- Do not leave the toner cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

25 Close the multi-purpose tray.



If you cannot close the multi-purpose tray, check if the toner cover is completely closed. If you try to close the multi-purpose tray forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.

26 Close the top cover.



If the message that indicates that paper is jammed somewhere in the paper sources or duplex unit does not disappear from the Printer Status Window even after closing the top cover, pieces of torn paper may still be remaining somewhere in the paper feeders or duplex unit. In this case, see "When the Message that Indicates the Paper Jam Does Not Disappear," on p. 7-29 to remove the jammed paper.

Paper Jam in the Paper Feeders

Check the paper feeders and remove the jammed paper in the following procedure:

Perform Step 1 to 17 of "Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams" (See p. 7-6).

2 Open the rear transport guide.

Holding the green tab, open the transport guide.



3 Remove any jammed paper.



4 Open the front transport guide.

Holding the green tab, open the transport guide.



5 Remove any jammed paper.



6 Close the front transport guide.



7 Close the rear transport guide.



8 Remove the paper cassettes one at a time starting at the top, and remove any jammed paper.



9 Set the paper cassettes in the main unit and paper feeders.



Proceed to Step 19 of "Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams" (See p. 7-16) to remove the jammed paper. If a paper jam occurs when performing 2-sided printing with the optional duplex unit, proceed to "Paper Jam in the Duplex Unit" (See p. 7-24).

Paper Jam in the Duplex Unit

Check the duplex unit and remove the jammed paper in the following procedure:

Perform Step 1 to 18 of "Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams" (See p. 7-6).

2 Open the duplex unit rear cover.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the duplex unit rear cover.



3 Close the top cover.



4 Open the duplex unit top cover.



5 Remove any paper jammed in the duplex unit top cover.



6 Close the duplex unit top cover.



7 If you see the jammed paper inside the duplex unit rear cover, simply pull out the paper to remove it.



8 If you cannot see the jammed paper inside the duplex unit rear cover, rotate the knob ① to send and remove the paper ②.



9 Open the top cover.



Raise the top cover slowly and firmly, and open it completely until it stops. If any jammed paper is removed when the top cover is not opened completely, it may result in damage to the printer.

10 Close the duplex unit rear cover.



Proceed to Step 19 of "Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams" (See p. 7-16) to remove the jammed paper.

When the Message that Indicates the Paper Jam Does Not Disappear

When the optional accessories are installed, and if the message that indicates that paper is jammed somewhere in the paper sources or duplex unit does not disappear from the Printer Status Window even after removing the jammed paper, pieces of torn paper may still be remaining somewhere in the paper sources of the paper feeders or duplex unit bottom cover area. Check the paper sources of the paper feeders and duplex unit bottom cover area and remove the jammed paper in the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

In case you remove jammed paper when the duplex unit is installed in the printer, the data being printed will be deleted because you have to turn the power of the printer OFF. After removing the jammed paper, print again.

When the duplex unit is not installed

Open the top cover.

Raise the top cover slowly and firmly, and open it completely until it stops. If any jammed paper is removed when the top cover is not opened completely, it may result in damage to the printer.

- **2** Pull out the paper cassette.
- **3** Open the multi-purpose tray, open the toner cover, and then remove the toner cartridge.
- **4** Close the toner cover, then close the multi-purpose tray.

5 Remove the bottom rear cover.



6 Make sure that there is no paper remaining in the area from the back to the inside of the printer.



7 Set the bottom rear cover.



- **8** Set the paper cassette.
- **9** Open the multi-purpose tray, open the toner cover, and then install the toner cartridge.
- **10** Close the toner cover, then close the multi-purpose tray.
- **11** Close the top cover.

1 Press "O" of the power switch to turn the printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



2 Remove all interface cables and the power cord.

3 Open the top cover.

Raise the top cover slowly and firmly, and open it completely until it stops. If any jammed paper is removed when the top cover is not opened completely, it may result in damage to the printer.

- **4** Pull out the paper cassette.
- **5** Open the multi-purpose tray, open the toner cover, and then remove the toner cartridge.
- **6** Close the toner cover, then close the multi-purpose tray.

7 Open the duplex unit rear cover.

Holding the grip at the center of the printer, open the duplex unit rear cover.



8 Push up the lock release levers on each side of the duplex unit (1), then remove the duplex unit (2).





9 Close the duplex unit rear cover, then place the duplex unit on a flat surface as shown in the figure.



10 Open the duplex unit bottom cover.



11 Remove any jammed paper.



12 Close the duplex unit bottom cover.



13 If the paper feeder is installed, make sure that there is no paper remaining in the area from the back to the inside of the printer.



14 To install the duplex unit, hold it upright and match the positioning pins on the holes on the back of the printer.

Push the duplex unit firmly until it clicks.



- **15** Set the paper cassette.
- **16** Open the multi-purpose tray, open the toner cover, and then install the toner cartridge.
- **17** Close the toner cover, then close the multi-purpose tray.
- **18** Close the top cover.
- **19** Connect all interface cables and the power cord to the printer.
- **20** Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- **21** Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.

Service Call Display 7-39

Service Call Display

When a problem has occurred and the printer does not work properly, the Alarm indicator (red) illuminates and the following service call shown in the figure appears.



If the service call appears, cycle the power of the printer using the following procedure. The message may disappear.





If the message does not reappear, the printer is functioning properly. If the error message still appears, proceed to the next step.

2 Note down the error code displayed in the Printer Status Window.



3 Turn the power of the printer printer OFF ①, then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet ②.



4 Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

When contacting your Canon dealer, please report the problems and the error code that you have noted.

Print Quality Problems

If any problem occurs while you are using the printer, take the following measures depending on the symptoms.

- If a message appears in the Printer Status Window, take measurements according to the message.
- For details on removing paper jams, see "Paper Jams," on p. 7-4.
- If a symptom that is not indicated in this section occurs, if none of the indicated remedies do not solve the problem, or if you cannot determine the problem, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

White streaks appear.

- Cause 1 The life of the toner cartridge has been reached or toner is not distributed evenly.
- Remedy Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner, and then reinstall the toner cartridge. If this does not solve the problem, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 2 The transport roller is dirty.
- Remedy Clean the transport roller. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 3 The transfer roller or photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is dirty.
- Remedy Clean the transfer roller and photosensitive drum. (See "Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum," on p. 5-26)
- Cause 4 The photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is deteriorating or damaged.
- Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)

Printed pages have white specks.

Cause 1 Paper is inappropriate.

Remedy Replace the paper with a type that can be printed and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)

Cause 2 The transport roller is dirty.

Remedy Clean the transport roller. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)

- Cause 3 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.
- Remedy Change the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)
- Cause 4 The transfer roller or photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is dirty.
- Remedy Clean the transfer roller and photosensitive drum. (See "Cleaning the Transfer Roller and Photosensitive Drum," on p. 5-26)
- Cause 5 The photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is deteriorating.
- Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)

Residual images appear on non-printed areas.

- Cause 1 Printing paper is inappropriate.
- Remedy Change the paper or transparencies and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)
- Cause 2 The photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is deteriorating.
- Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 3 Paper of a wider width was printed just after paper with a width of Letter wide (279.4 mm) or narrower was printed continuously.
- Remedy To lower the temperature of the fixing unit, wait for a while before printing again.

The overall print result is faint.

- Cause 1 The setting for [Toner Density] is not appropriate.
- Remedy Drag the [Toner Density] slider in the printer driver toward [Dark]. In order to specify the setting for [Toner Density], click the [Details] button in the [Quality] sheet to open the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- Cause 2 [Use Toner Save] is selected.
- Remedy Remove the checkmark from [Use Toner Save] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Use Toner Save], click the [Details] button in the [Quality] sheet to open the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.

The overall print result is dark.

Cause 1 The setting for [Toner Density] is not appropriate.

- Remedy Drag the [Toner Density] slider in the printer driver toward [Light]. In order to specify the setting for [Toner Density], click the [Details] button in the [Quality] sheet to open the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- Cause 2 The printer is exposed to direct sunlight or strong light.
- Remedy Move the printer to a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight or strong light. Alternatively, move the strong light source away from the printer.

The print is uneven.

- Cause 1 Life of the toner cartridge has been reached.
- Remedy Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner, and then reinstall the toner cartridge. If this does not solve the problem, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 2 Paper is too moist or too dry.
- Remedy Change the paper with appropriate one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)
- Cause 3 The toner cartridge is deteriorating or damaged.
- Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)

Front or back of the printouts is stained with black dots.

Cause The fixing roller is dirty.

Remedy Clean the fixing roller. (See "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 5-21)

Smudge marks of spattering toner appear around the text.

Cause This kind of phenomenon may occur when printing text data.

Remedy Display the Printer Status Window, select [Device Settings] from the [Options] menu, and then remove the checkmark from [Graphics Special Mode] in the [Device Settings] dialog box. Images on printed paper are attached with dots (foamy dots).

- Cause This kind of phenomenon may occur when printing graphics data (graphics, tables, or charts) that contains many halftones.
- Remedy Display the Printer Status Window, select [Device Settings] from the [Options] menu, and then place a checkmark for [Graphics Special Mode] in the [Device Settings] dialog box.

A portion of a page is not printed.

sheet.

Cause 1 The scale factor is incorrect.

- Remedy 1 Remove the checkmark from [Manual Scaling] in the printer driver. If you remove the checkmark, the scale factor will be set according to [Page Size] and [Output Size] automatically. In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], open the [Page Setup]
- Remedy 2 Place a checkmark for [Manual Scaling] in the printer driver and specify an appropriate scale factor according to the paper size to be used. In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], open the [Page Setup] sheet.
- Cause 2 The position of the paper is incorrect.
- Remedy Load the paper properly. (See "Printing from a Paper Cassette," on p. 2-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 2-57)
- Cause 3 A document with no margins was printed.
- Remedy Data cannot be printed within a 5 mm margin (10 mm for envelopes) on all sides of the paper. Therefore, you should secure a margin of 5 mm or more (10 mm or more for envelopes) around the data.

Print position is misaligned.

- Cause 1 [Gutter] is specified.
- Remedy Specify [Gutter] in the printer driver to "0".

In order to specify the setting for [Gutter], click the [Gutter] button in the [Finishing] sheet to open the [Gutter Settings] dialog box. In order to specify the setting for [Gutter] for booklet printing, select [Booklet Printing] for [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet, and then click the [Booklet] button to open the [Detailed Settings for Booklet] dialog box for [Specify Booklet Gutter]. Cause 2 "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application are not specified properly.

Remedy Specify the settings for "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application properly. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

The next page is printed from halfway through the previous page.

- Cause "Line Spacing" or "Lines/Page" in the application is not specified properly.
- Remedy Specify the settings for "Line Spacing" and "Lines/Page" in the application so that data fits in one page, and print again. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

Nothing is printed on paper.

- Cause 1 The toner cartridge was installed with the sealing tape still attached.
- Remedy Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, pull out the sealing tape, and reinstall the toner cartridge. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 2 A few sheets of paper were fed at a time.
- Remedy Align the paper stack in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray properly and load it again. If you are using transparencies or labels, fan them thoroughly and load them again. (See "Printing from a Paper Cassette," on p. 2-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 2-57)
- Cause 3 A problem has occurred inside the printer.
- Remedy 1 If "Service Error" is displayed in the Printer Status Window, turn the power OFF, wait for 3 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. The message may disappear.
- Remedy 2 If the message does not disappear after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local Canon dealer for servicing.

Paper comes out completely black.

- Cause 1 The photosensitive drum in the toner cartridge is deteriorating.
- Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with new one. (See "Replacing the Toner Cartridge," on p. 5-2)
- Cause 2 A problem has occurred inside the printer.
- Remedy 1 If "Service Error" is displayed in the Printer Status Window, turn the power OFF, wait for 3 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. The message may disappear.

Remedy 2 If the message does not disappear after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local Canon dealer for servicing.

Toner does not fix onto paper completely.

Cause 1	Paper is inappropriate.
Remedy	Replace the paper with a type that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)
Cause 2	Toner does not fix well.
Remedy	Select the appropriate fixing mode from [Fixing Mode] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Fixing Mode], click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the

button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box to open the [Advanced Settings] dialog box. [Mode 3] enhances the toner fixing the most, and [Mode 2] and [Mode 1] follow respectively. [Mode 4] enhances the toner fixing the least.

Colored lines and text come out faint.

Cause Thin lines or text are being used.

Remedy Place a checkmark for [Print Colored Text and Lines in Black] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Print Colored Text and Lines in Black], click the [Details] button in the [Quality] sheet to open the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.

Colored text appears to be blurred.

Cause A bold font is being used for the colored text.

Remedy Select [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]] for [Matching Method] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Matching Method], place a checkmark for [Manual Grayscale Settings] in the [Quality] sheet, then click the [Grayscale Settings] button to open the [Matching] sheet.

Paper Problems 7-47

Paper com	es out wrinkled.
Cause 1	Paper is not loaded in the paper cassette properly.
Remedy	Load paper in the paper cassette properly. (See "Printing from a Paper Cassette," on p. 2-17)
Cause 2	Paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray at an angle.
Remedy	Load the paper in the multi-purpose tray straight. (See "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 2-57)
Cause 3	Paper is damp.
Remedy	Replace paper with paper from a new stack.
Paper curls	3.
Cause 1	Paper is inappropriate.
Remedy	Replace the paper with a type that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 2-2)
Cause 2	The Paper Type setting does not match the loaded paper.
Remedy	Select [Plain Paper L] for [Paper Type] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Paper Type], open the [Paper Source] sheet.
White dust	is attached to the printed transparencies.
Cause	The transparencies were printed just after another type of paper was printed continuously.
Remedy	If you print continuously on another type of paper before printing on transparencies, the transparencies may come out with chipped paper attached. In this case, wipe and remove the chipped paper with a soft cloth.
Paper jams	occur when performing automatic 2-sided printing.
Cause 1	Paper is damp.
Remedy	Replace the paper with paper from a new stack and print again.

Paper Problems

- Cause 2 The Paper Type setting does not match the loaded paper.
- Remedy Display the Printer Status Window, select [Device Settings] from the [Options] menu, and then place a checkmark for [2-sided Special Mode] in the [Device Settings] dialog box.

Paper jams occur when performing 2-sided printing manually.

- Cause This kind of phenomenon may occur when using curled or thin paper.
- Remedy Place a checkmark for [Print on the Back of Printed Paper from the Multi-purpose Tray] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Print on the Back of Printed Paper from the Multi-purpose Tray], click the [Finishing Details] button in the [Finishing] sheet and the [Advanced Settings] button in the [Finishing Details] dialog box to open the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

When Nothing is Printed 7-49

When Nothing is Printed

Check the following items if nothing is printed when performing printing from the application:

Check if any error message is displayed in the Printer Status Window.

If not, uninstall the CAPT software and install it again. (See "Uninstalling the CAPT Software," on p. 3-77)

2 Print a test page.

Click [Print Test Page] in the [General] sheet in the [Printer Properties] dialog box.

When the test page is printed correctly

Printing can be performed from the CAPT software. Check your application to make sure that all the settings are specified properly.

When the test page cannot be printed

Uninstall the CAPT software, reinstall it, and print a test page again. (See "Uninstalling the CAPT Software," on p. 3-77)
Installation Problems

If "USB Class Driver" and "LBP3600 Printer Driver" cannot be installed properly, perform the following procedure to check problems.

NOTE

For details on problems on the network installation, see "Chapter 4 Troubleshooting" in Network Guide.



7

When Uninstallation Fails

If you cannot uninstall the CAPT software with the Uninstaller that was created during installation, perform the following procedure to uninstall the CAPT software from [Add/Remove Programs] ([Add or Remove Programs] for Windows XP/Server 2003).

From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Control Panel], and then double-click [Add/Remove Programs].

For Windows Server XP: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Add or Remove Programs].

For Windows Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] \rightarrow [Add or Remove Programs].

2 Select the name for this printer in the [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box, then click [Change/Remove].

For Windows XP/Server 2003: Select the name for this printer in the [Add or Remove Programs] dialog box, then click [Change/Remove]. For Windows 98/Me: Select the name for this printer in the [Add/Remove Programs Properties] dialog box, then click [Add/Remove].



NOTE

If the name for this printer is not displayed in the [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box (the [Add or Remove Programs] dialog box for Windows XP/Server 2003), perform "Uninstalling the USB Class Driver" (See p. 7-53), then install the CAPT software again.

3 Select the name for this printer, then click [Delete].



4 Click [Yes].



Uninstallation starts. Please wait until it is completed.

5 Click [Exit].

Tinter Name	Driver Name	Version

The [Delete Printer] dialog box closes.

6 Restart Windows.

Uninstalling the USB Class Driver

Uninstalling the USB class driver is required when you cannot install the CAPT software properly after uninstalling it once or when you cannot uninstall the CAPT software.

Make sure that the computer is connected to the printer with the USB cable and that the power of the printer is turned ON.

2 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Control Panel], and then double-click [Add/Remove Programs].

For Windows Server XP: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Add or Remove Programs]. For Windows Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] \rightarrow [Add

or Remove Programs].

3 Make sure that [Canon LBP3600] is not displayed in the [Add/ Remove Programs] dialog box, and then click [X].

For Windows XP/Server 2003: Make sure that [Canon LBP3600] is not displayed in the [Add or Remove Programs] dialog box, and then click [X].





If [Canon LBP3600] is displayed in the [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box (the [Add or Remove Programs] dialog box for Windows XP/Server 2003), see "Uninstalling the USB Class Driver," on p. 7-53 to delete [Canon LBP3600] in the [Add/Remove Programs] dialog box (the [Add or Remove Programs] dialog box for Windows XP/Server 2003).

4 From the [Start] menu, select [Settings] → [Control Panel], and then double-click the [System] icon.

For Windows XP Professional/Server 2003: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [System].

For Windows XP Home Edition: From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] \rightarrow [System].



5 Click [Hardware] → [Device Manager], and then double-click [Universal Serial Bus controllers].

For Windows 98/Me: Display the [System Properties] dialog box, click the [Device Manager] tab, and then double-click [Universal Serial Bus controllers].



6 Select [USB Printing Support], then select [Remove] in the [Action] menu.

For Windows 98, select [Canon LBP3600], for Windows Me, select [Canon CAPT USB Device], and then click [Remove].



- If the USB class driver is under [Other Devices], the installation has not been performed properly. According to your operating system, select and delete any one of [Canon LBP3600], [Canon CAPT USB Device], or [Unknown devices].
- Never delete other devices or device drivers. If you delete them by mistake, Windows may not operate properly.
- If the USB class driver is not installed properly, [USB Printing Support] (for Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003), [Canon CAPT USB Device] (for Windows Me), or [Canon LBP3600] (for Windows 98) is not displayed.

7 When the [Confirm Device Removal] dialog box appears, click [OK].



8 Click [Close].

[System Properties] closes.

9 Disconnect the USB cable from the computer, then restart Windows.

After Windows starts up again, reinstall the CAPT software. (See "Installing the CAPT Software," on p. 3-4)

Problems During Local Installation

When installing the printer driver from the CD-ROM, the printer is not recognized automatically even after the USB cable is connected.

- Cause 1 The USB cable has already been connected and the printer is turned ON before installing the printer driver.
- Remedy Turn the power of the printer OFF and disconnect the USB cable. Then, connect the USB cable again and turn the printer ON.
- Cause 2 The power of the printer is turned OFF.
- Remedy Turn the power of the printer ON.
- Cause 3 The USB cable is not connected properly.
- Remedy Make sure that the printer and computer are connected with the USB cable properly.
- Cause 4 An inappropriate USB cable is being used.
- Remedy Use a USB cable appropriate for the USB interface environment of this printer. The USB interface environment of this printer is USB 2.0 High-Speed (Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 only) and USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent).

[Local Printer]* cannot be selected in the [Add Printer Wizard] dialog box (Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003).

- Cause Installation was performed by a user who is not a member of Administrators or Power Users.
- Remedy Install the CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology) software as a user who is a member of Administrators.

*For Windows XP/Server 2003: Select [Local printer attached to this computer].

Installation Problems When the Printer is Shared on a Network

The print server to be connected cannot be found.

Cause 1 The print server has not been started up.

Remedy Start up the print server.

- Cause 2 The printer is not specified as a shared printer.
- Remedy Specify the printer as a shared printer in the [Printer Properties] dialog box.
- Cause 3 The user does not have permission to access the print server or printer.
- Remedy Ask your network administrator to change the user permissions.

Miscellaneous Problems

NOTE

For details on problems on installing the optional network board, see "Chapter 4 Troubleshooting" in Network Guide.

LBP3600 does not function properly.

- Cause 1 LBP3600 is not specified as the default printer.
- Remedy Specify it as the default printer.
- Cause 2 The CAPT software may not be installed properly.
- Remedy In order to check if the CAPT software is installed properly, print from the application. If you cannot print properly, uninstall the CAPT software and install it again. (See "Uninstalling the CAPT Software," on p. 3-77, "Installing the CAPT Software," on p. 3-4)

The printer stops printing temporarily during printing.

- Cause 1 The temperature of the fixing unit exceeded a certain degree limit by a continuous job (especially by printing paper of a narrow width).
- Remedy Wait for a while. The printer automatically cools down the fixing unit. The printer resumes the paused job after cooling down the fixing unit.
- Cause 2 In case paper of a wider width is printed after paper of a narrower width is printed, the printer cools down the fixing unit to keep the print quality high.
- Remedy Wait for a while. The printer automatically cools down the fixing unit. After cooling down the fixing unit, the printer stops running and becomes ready to print. In case during printing, the printer resumes the job after cooling down the fixing unit.

CD-ROM Setup does not appear automatically.

- Cause 1 [Always Display when CD is Inserted] in CD-ROM Setup is not selected.
- Remedy Right-click the CD-ROM drive icon in [My Computer] and select [Open] to display CD-ROM Setup manually. Select [Always Display when CD is Inserted].

Cause 2 [Auto Insert Notification] is not selected. (Windows 98/Me only)

Remedy Display the properties for the CD-ROM drive from [Device Manager] and select [Auto Insert Notification] in the [Settings] sheet.

The error message "File not found on CD-ROM." appears when CD-ROM Setup starts up.

- Cause The program is loaded from the hard disk.
- Remedy Browse [CNAB1MNU.EXE] using the browse function of your computer, delete the CNAB1MNU.EXE file from the hard disk, and then start up CD-ROM Setup from the supplied CD-ROM "LBP3600 User Software".

The message, "Toner Cover Open" appears in the Printer Status Window.

- Cause 1 The toner cover is open.
- Remedy Close the toner cover. If you cannot close the toner cover, check if the toner cartridge is set properly. If you close the toner cover forcefully, this may cause damage to the printer.
- Cause 2 The top rear cover is not set properly.
- Remedy Check if the top rear cover is set properly. If the top rear cover is not set properly, take the cover out once, and then set it again, properly. (See "Moving the Printer," on p. 5-37)

The message, "Duplex Unit is not attached correctly" appears in the Printer Status Window.

- Cause 1 The duplex unit is not installed properly.
- Remedy Turn the power of the printer OFF, then install the duplex unit again, properly.
- Cause 2 The top rear cover is not set properly.
- Remedy Check if the top rear cover is set properly. If the top rear cover is not set properly, take the cover out once, and then set it again, properly. (See "Moving the Printer," on p. 5-37)

Confirming the Printer Features

This printer features Printer Status Print that allows you to confirm the optional settings of the printer, settings for [Device Settings] in the [Options] menu in Printer Status Window, and the current printer status such as the total number of printouts. This printer also offers Network Status Print that allows you to confirm the version of the optional network board or TCP/IP settings. Use these functions when required after installing and connecting the printer, for example when you want to check the operation.

NOTE

- Printer Status Print is designed to be printed on A4 size paper. Load A4 size paper.
- For details on Network Status Print, see "Chapter 4 Troubleshooting" in Network Guide.

1 Display the Printer Status Window.

For details on procedures for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Displaying the Printer Status Window," on p. 4-81.

Options He	lp	
🗊 Read	dy to Print	*
		<u> </u>
		\$
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Current Print Job	My Job Operation	
Current Print Job Title Document Na User Name	My Job Operation	
Current Print Job Title Document Na User Name Computer Nan	My Job Operation	

2 From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] \rightarrow [Printer Status Print].



3 Click [OK].

Printer Status Prinl	. 🗙
Performs	Printer Status Print.
С	Cancel

Printer Status Print is printed.

4 Confirm the contents of the Printer Status Print.

Printer Status Print prints information as shown in the following figure. You can confirm the optional settings of the printer, settings for [Device Settings] in the [Options] menu in Printer Status Window, and the current printer status such as the total number of printouts.

This is a sample of Status Print. The contents may differ from the Status Print printed by your computer.

	Cassette2 Cassette3	Contraction of the Contraction o
	Cassette3	EXIST
	Cassattad	: Exist
	cassoccev	: Exist
	Duplex Unit	: Non
	Network board	: Exist
Device	Setting	
	2-sided Special Mode	: Don't Used
	Graphics Special Mode	: Don't Used
	Lighten Flicker Mode	: Don't Used
	Print Position Adjustment	
	Multi-purpose Tray	:0.0 mm
	Cassettel	:0.0 mm
	Cassette2	:0.0 mm
	Cassette3	:0.0 mm
	Cassette4	:0.0 mm
Produc	t Name	: LBP3600
Produc	t Name ller Version	: LBP3600 : KKKK
Produc Contro Engine	t Name ller Version Version	: LBP3600 : KXXX : KXXXX
Produc Contro Engine Driver	t Name ller Version Version Version	: LBP3600 : KOOK : KOOK : KOOK
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB	t Name ller Version Version Version	: LBP3600 : KUKK : KUKKK : KUKKK
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB Vendor	t Name ller Version Version Version	: LBP3600 : XXXX : XXXX : XXXX : XXXX : 0x04a9
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB Vendor Produc	t Name ller Version Version Version ID t ID	: LBP3600 : XXXX : XXXX : XXXX : XXXX : XXXX : 0x04a9 : 0x2654
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB Vendor Produc Serial	t Name ller Version Version ID t ID Number	: LBP3600 : 5050 : 5050
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB Vendor Produc Serial Counte Date A	t Name ller Version Version ID t ID Number r n d Time	: LBP3600 : MOUX : MOUX : MOUX : MOUX : MOUX : MOUX : 0x04m9 : 0x2654 : 00000000000 : 27/05/2004 20:0
Produc Contro Engine Driver Vendor Produc Serial Counte Date A Number	t Name ller Version Version TD t D Number r nd Time of Total Printed Pages	: LBP3600 : KKK : KKK : KKK : 0x04a9 : 0x2654 : 0x2654 : 27705/2004 20:0 : 4335 page
Produc Contro Engine Driver USB Vendor Produc Serial Counte Date A Number Duplex	t Name ller Version Version ID t ID Number r nd Time of Total Printed Pages Print Paper Counter	: LBP3600 : WWW : WWW : 0x0489 : 0x2654 : 0x2654 : 27/05/2004 20:0 : 4335 page : 435 piace

Appendix



This chapter describes the printer specifications and index.

Specifications	.8-2
Hardware Specifications	8-2
Software Specifications	8-3
Dimensions of Each Part	.8-4
Print Monitor Installer	.8-7
Index	.8-8
Location of the Serial Number	8-13

Specifications

Hardware Specifications

Туре		Desk-top Page Printer
Printing metho	d	Electrophoto Method (On-demand fixing)
Print speed Plain paper (64 - 80 g/m²)		 When printing A4 continuously: 22 pages/min. * Print speed may drop in stages depending on the paper size, paper type, print copies, and the settings of the fixing mode. (This is because the safety function that prevents damage caused by heat becomes active.)
Warm-up time		0 second (9 seconds or less when the printer is ON)
First print time		 8.6* seconds (When printing A4) * May vary depending on the output environment. (Max. 9.5 seconds or less)
Paper size	Cassette 1	A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, Executive Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
	Cassette 2 (Optional)	A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, Executive Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
	Cassette 3 (Optional)	A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, Executive Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
	Cassette 4 (Optional)	A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Ledger, Legal, Letter, Executive Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
	Multi-purpose tray	Width: 76.2 - 297.0 mm Length: 127.0 - 431.8 mm (Custom size paper can be loaded only in portrait orientation) Paper capacity: approx. 100 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Automatic 2-sided printing		A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, Legal, Ledger, Letter, Executive
Output orienta	tion	Face-down
Output capacity		Output tray: approx. 250 sheets (64 g/m ²)
Noise level (Bystander position) (Noise rating number based on ISO9296)		During standby: Max. 30 dB [A] During print: Max. 50 dB [A]
Operating environment (Printer unit only)		Operating environment temperature: 10 to 32.5 °C (50 to 90.5 °F) Humidity: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

Storage environment (Printer unit only)		Storage environment temperature: 0 to 35 °C (32 to 95 °F) Humidity: 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation)
Host interface		USB interface * Windows 98/Me: USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent) * Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/ USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
User interface		3 LED indicators
Expansion slot		1
Power		AC 100 V ± 10 % (50/60 Hz ± 2 Hz)
Power consumption (at temperature of 20 °C or 68 °F)		Average during operation: approx. 474 W ^{*1} Average during standby: approx. 12 W ^{*1} Maximum: 915 W ^{*2} or less ^{*1} When the optional accessories are not installed. ^{*2} Power consumption is 960 W or less when all the optional accessories are installed. However, the instantaneous peak on startup shall not be counted.
Consumables	Toner cartridge	 EP-66 Cartridge Number of printable pages: approx. 10,000* pages * When performing 1-sided printing on A4 size paper at 5 % printing ratio.
Weight		Printer unit (excluding the toner cartridge)approx. 19.9 kg Toner cartridgeapprox. 2.0 kg 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66A*approx. 1.5 kg 250-sheet universal cassette UC-66B*approx. 1.5 kg 250-sheet paper feeder unit PF-66 (including the cassette)*approx. 7.8 kg 250-sheet paper feeder unit PF-66E (including the cassette)*approx 6.4 kg Duplex unit*approx. 4.6 kg * mark indicates optional products.

Software Specifications

Printing software	CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology)
Printable area	Data cannot be printed within a 5 mm margin on all sides of the paper. (For envelopes, 10 mm margin on all sides)

Dimensions of Each Part

Printer

Standard state



• State with the paper feeders installed



• State with the duplex unit installed



• State with the paper feeders and duplex unit installed



■ 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66



■ 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66E



■ Duplex Unit DU-66



Print Monitor Installer

The supplied CD-ROM includes "Print Monitor Installer" that creates the port (Canon CAPT Print Monitor) for connecting your computer to the printer on a TCP/ IP network, as well as the printing software (CAPT). For details on Canon CAPT Print Monitor, see "Network Guide".

NOTE

When the printer driver is installed from CD-ROM Setup, the port (Canon CAPT Print Monitor) is created automatically. Use "Print Monitor Installer" as needed when you want to create the port without using CD-ROM Setup.

Index

Numerics

100 Indicator, 6-40 2-sided Printing Automatic 2-sided Printing, 2-77 Loading Paper, 2-80 Performing 2-sided Printing Manually, 2-83

A

Add Printer Wizard Windows 2000, 3-30 Windows 98/Me, 3-17 Windows XP/Server 2003, 3-44 Adjusting the Printing Position, 5-28 Administrators Permission, 3-21, 3-26, 3-30, 3-37, 3-41 Advanced Settings, 4-29 [Advanced] Sheet, 4-36 Alarm Indicator, 1-6, 7-3 Auxiliary Tray, 1-4

В

B & W Halftones, 4-66 Binding Location, 4-28 Booklet, 4-27 Borders, 4-54 Bottom Rear Cover, 1-5 Brightness, 4-67

С

Canon CAPT Print Monitor, 8-7 Canon Printer Uninstaller, 3-52 CAPT (Canon Advanced Printing Technology), 3-4 Cleaning Fixing Roller, 5-21 Photosensitive Drum, 5-26 Printer, 5-35 Transfer Roller, 5-26 Client, 3-57, 3-67 [Configuration] Sheet (Windows 98/Me), 4-37 Continue Printing with the Multi-purpose Tray, 4-31 Contrast, 4-68 Copies, 4-24 Custom Paper Size, 4-25, 4-52

D

Delete Job. 4-7 Delivery Guide Inner Cover, 1-5 Details, 4-28, 4-32 [Details] Sheet, 4-34 [Device Settings] Sheet (Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003), 4-37 Dimensions, 8-4 **Document Properties** Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, 4-14, 4-15, 4-22 Windows 98/Me, 4-10, 4-22 Download and Installation, 3-57, 3-68 Duplex Unit, 4-37, 6-28 Duplex Unit Installation. 6-32 Installation Space, 6-29 Parts and Functions, 6-30 Removal, 6-34 Duplex Unit Connector, 1-5

Ε

Edit and Preview, 4-75 Edit Watermark, 4-26 EMF Spooling, 4-62 Enable Image Correction, 4-66 Envelope, 2-5, 2-67 ERR Indicator, 6-40 Expansion Slot, 1-4

F

Finishing, 4-28, 4-60 Finishing Details, 4-29 [Finishing] Sheet, 4-27 Fixing Mode, 4-62 Foot Positions, 6-8

G

Gamma, 4-68 [General] Sheet, 4-34 Get Device Status, 4-37 [Grayscale Adjustment] Sheet, 4-32 Grayscale Settings, 4-32 Grips for Moving, 1-4 Gutter, 4-28, 4-59

Η

Heavy Paper, 2-4, 2-17, 2-58

Image Refinement, 4-62 Important Safety Instructions, xii Indicators, 1-3 Installation Windows 2000, 3-21 Windows 98/Me, 3-5 Windows XP/Server 2003, 3-36 Installation on Clients, 3-67 Installation Problems, 7-50

L

Label, 2-4, 2-58 LAN Cable, 1-15 Connector, 6-40 Laser Beam, xv Layout Options, 4-26 Left Cover, 1-5 LNK Indicator, 6-40 Loading Paper Envelope, 2-67 Heavy Paper, 2-17, 2-58 Label, 2-58 Multi-purpose Tray, 2-57 Paper Cassette, 2-17 Transparency, 2-58 Local Installation, 3-57 Local Printer, 3-18, 3-31, 3-46

Μ

MAC Address, 6-40 Manual Grayscale Settings, 4-32, 4-67 Manual Scaling, 4-25 Matching Method, 4-68 [Matching] Sheet, 4-33 Maximum Power Consumption, 8-3 Miscellaneous Problems, 7-58 Monitor Profile, 4-68 Moving the Printer, 5-37 Multi-purpose Tray, 1-4

Ν

NB-C1, 6-38 Network Board, 6-38 Network Board Installation, 6-41 Parts and Functions, 6-40 Removal, 6-51 Reset, 6-48 Setting the DIP Switches, 6-45 Network Environment, 1-15, 3-57

0

Objective, 4-31, 4-65 Online Help, 4-23 Optional Accessories, 6-2 Output Size, 4-24 Output Tray, 1-3

Ρ

Page Layout, 4-24 Page Order, 4-25 [Page Setup] Sheet, 4-23 Page Size, 4-23 PageComposer, 4-77 Paper Printable Area, 2-6 Storage, 2-8 Storing Printouts, 2-9 Paper Cassette, 1-4 Paper Delivery Area Output Tray, 2-15 Paper Capacity, 2-16 Paper Feeder 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66, 6-6 250-sheet Paper Feeder Unit PF-66E, 6-6 Installation, 6-20 Installation Space, 6-8 Parts and Functions, 6-9 Removal, 6-25 Paper Guide, 1-4 Paper Indicator, 1-6 Paper Jams, 7-4 Paper Orientation Cassette 1, 2-22 Cassette 2, 3, and 4, 2-29

Multi-purpose Tray (Other than Envelopes), 2-61 Paper Problems, 7-47 Paper Retaining Lever, 1-4 Paper Selection, 4-30, 4-63 Paper Size Abbreviations of Paper Sizes, 2-6 Change, 2-32 List, 2-3 Paper Size Cover, 1-5 Paper Size Dial, 1-5 Paper Size Guide, 1-4 Paper Size Slot, 1-5 Paper Source, 4-30 Paper Source Paper Capacity, 2-11 Selection, 2-12 Type, 2-10 Paper Source Options, 4-19, 4-37 [Paper Source] Sheet, 4-29 Paper Type, 4-30 Paper Type List, 2-3 Parts and Their Functions, 1-3 Pause Job. 4-7 Pause When Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray, 4-31 Peripheral Space, 6-8 Plain Paper, 2-4 Plug and Play Windows 2000, 3-26 Windows 98/Me, 3-10 Windows XP/Server 2003, 3-41 [Ports] Sheet, 4-35 Poster Printing, 4-45 Power Power Switch, 1-3 Power Socket, 1-5 Preview, 4-40 Print Colored Text and Lines in Black, 4-66 Print Grayscale Sample, 4-33, 4-68 Print Last Page in 1-sided Mode When 2-sided Printing is Set, 4-62 Print Monitor Installer, 8-7 Print on the Back of Printed Paper from the Multi-purpose Tray, 4-62 Print Quality Problems, 7-41

Print Server, 3-58 Print Server Settings Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, 3-62 Windows 98/Me, 3-58 Print with Mixed Paper Sizes/Orientations, 4-27, 4-57 Printer Moving the Printer, 5-37 Parts and Their Functions, 1-3 Precautions for Handling, 5-45 Storage, 5-46 Printer Connector, 6-40 Printer Driver Installation, 3-4 Uninstallation. 3-77 Printer Features, 7-60 Printer Name, 3-16, 3-20, 3-34, 3-49 **Printer Properties** Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, 4-17, 4-23 Windows 98/Me, 4-12, 4-22 Printer Sharing Settings Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003, 3-64 Windows 98/Me. 3-61 Printer Status Window Device Settings Menu, 4-84 Display, 4-81 Parts and Functions, 4-79 Preferences, 4-82 Refresh, 4-85 Resolve Error, 4-85 Utility Menu, 4-84 Printing, 4-3 Printing Date, 4-54 Printing Operation, 4-7 Printing Orientation, 4-24 Printing Preferences, 4-9 Problems Installation, 7-50 Others, 7-58 Paper, 7-47 Print Quality, 7-41 When Nothing is Printed, 7-49 Profile Add. 4-39 Allow Profile Selection, 4-40 Allow Setting Edition, 4-40

Comment, 4-38 Delete, 4-39 Edit, 4-39 Export, 4-39 Import, 4-39 Name, 4-38 Profile List, 4-38 Specifying Profiles, 4-71 [Profile] Sheet, 4-38

Q

[Quality] Sheet, 4-31

R

Rating Label, 1-5 Ready Indicator, 1-6 Required System Environment, 3-3 Resume Job, 4-7

S

Scaling, 4-43 [Security] Sheet, 4-36 Self-diagnostic Test, 1-10 Serial Number, 8-13 Service Call Display, 7-39 Shared Printer, 3-57 [Sharing] Sheet, 4-35 Show Icon in the Taskbar, 4-37 Specifications Hardware, 8-2 Software, 8-3 Spooling at Host, 4-37

Т

Toner Cartridge Cleaning Toner Cartridge and Its Surroundings, 5-12 Handling, 5-18 Replacement, 5-2, 5-8 Storage, 5-20 Using Up Toner, 5-3 Toner Cartridge Guide, 1-6 Toner Cover, 1-5 Toner Cover Release Button, 1-5 Toner Density, 4-66 Top Cover, 1-3 Top Rear Cover, 1-4 Transfer Roller, 1-6 Transparency, 2-4, 2-58 Troubleshooting Map, 7-2

U

Uninstallation, 3-77 Unusable Paper, 2-7 Usable Paper, 2-2 USB Cable, 1-13 Class Driver, 3-9, 3-13, 3-25, 3-40 Connector, 1-4 Use Toner Save, 4-32, 4-66

V

Ventilation Slot, 1-5 Ventilation Slot (Air Intake Slot), 1-5 Ventilation Slot (Exhaust Slot), 1-5

W

Watermark, 4-25, 4-47 When Nothing is Printed, 7-49

Location of the Serial Number

A serial number consists of four-alphabetic characters and a six-digit number.

IMPORTANT

The labels are required for a service engineer to check the serial number for service or maintenance. Be sure not to peel them off.

Rear View



Outside View of the Packaging Box



Canon